THE

RUDIMENTS

OF THE

Latin Tongue;

A plain and easy Introduction

TO

Latin Grammar;

WHEREIN

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE are methodically digested both in ENGLISH and LATIN.

WITH

Useful NOTES *and* Observations, *explaining the* TERMS *of* GRAMMAR, *and further improving its* RULES.

By THO. RUDDIMAN, *M. A.*

The Thirteenth Edition corrected.

EDINBURGH:

Printed and sold by the AUTHOR, and the Booksellers there. M. DCC. LV.

Exch.
Library
Duke University
5-8-1934

THE PREFACE.

AMONG the ſeveral Inſtructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue commonly taught in our Schools, are many ways inſufficient in reſpect to the End propoſed by them: That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is deſigned to teach; that the other is defective particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the Rules of both are often obſcure and intricate, and ſometimes falſe and erroneous. Whereupon ſome knowing Maſters of that Profeſſion, by their repeated Sollicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which they conceived might in a great Meaſure be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and ſo

Digitized by Google

contrived as to bring down its *Rules* to th
Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make ther
enter with more Eaſe and Familiarity into h
Mind. This is the End I had in View: *Wi*
what Succeſs it has been proſecuted, is a Pr
vince for others, not me, to determine. Hov
ever, if any thing inclines me to hope i
Acceptance in the World, it is owing to th
kind Aſſiſtance I have had from time to tin
of the above mentioned and other Gentl
men, as the Duty of their reſpective Emplo
ments would permit them. What diſcou
ged me moſt in this Undertaking, was t
different Opinions of *Grammarians*, w
the ſharp Conteſts and Diſputes they ha
had about the Method of *Inſtruction*, a
the moſt proper Way to communicate
Latin Tongue to others with the greateſt
cility and Expedition. It would be almoſt
endleſs Task to reckon up the vari
Schemes that have been projected for t
Purpoſe: Therefore I ſhall engage no fart
in this Subject, than as it ſeems neceſſary
give my Reader a clear and diſtinct View
the Reaſons that determined me to the M
thod I have followed.

I have long obſerved, that thoſe of
Country, whoſe Buſineſs it is to direct
Studies of Youth, are greatly divided ab
what an *Introduction to Latin Gramm*

ou

Digitized by Google

ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts ſhould be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is poſſible, and not to burden the Memory of the Learner with any thing but what is eſſential and abſolutely neceſſary; while others contend that this is too general, and not ſufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part incline to have the firſt *Principles* of *Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of theſe ſome Perſons of Diſtinction, who are ſtill for retaining them in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at firſt with more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more laſting Impreſſion on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of ſpeaking *Latin*, a Practice much uſed in our Schools. It appeared next to an Impoſſibility to ſatisfy ſo many different Opinions: However the Method I have taken ſeems to bid faireſt for it. For I have reduced the Subſtance of theſe *Rudiments* into a Sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin* an *Engliſh* Verſion, leaving the Maſter to his own Choice and Diſcretion which to uſe. And that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have ſubjoined large *Notes*, which, I humbly conceive, will ſupply that Defect.

To

Digitized by Google

To render my Design of more general Use I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby swelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wished, or some perhaps will excuse; tho' the Reasons are so obvious, that it is needless to relate them. I confess I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* seemed to require: But as I presume there is nothing in them but what may be useful either to Master or Scholar; and since it was never my Intention that they should be all taught, or any of them, with the same Care as the *Essential Parts*, I thought they might the more easily be dispensed with. There is one Thing more which has considerably encreased them, *viz.* the *Remarks* I have added on *English Nouns*, *Pronouns* and *Verbs*, which I judged useful on a double Account; *First*, As they serve to illustrate *Latin Grammar*, the first Notions and Impressions whereof we receive from the Language we ourselves speak. *Secondly*, Because the greater Number of those who are taught the *Latin* Tongue, reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to speak and write *English* with the greater Exactness, I supposed it would not be amiss to throw in something in order to that End.

Having

Digitized by Google

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my ıdertaking, all I ſhall ſay of the particular anagement of it, is, that I have laboured l along to render every Thing as plain and ſy as I poſſibly could, conſidering with a nder Regard for whoſe Benefit it is deſign- . I have conſulted the beſt *Grammarians* ɔth Ancient and Modern, and have borrow- l from them whatever I conceived fit for ıy Purpoſe; tho' not contenting myſelf with ıeir bare Authority, I frequently had Re- ourſe to the Fountain itſelf, I mean, the pu- eſt Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus have been ſollicitous to avoid *Error*, ſo I ıave been cautious not to incur the Cenſure f having affected *Novelty*, and therefore ıave receded no farther from the common *Syſtems* than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the uſual *Terms* of *Art*, which have ſo long obtained in the Schools, :ho' ſometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I ſaw Occaſion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as ſmall a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was conſiſtent with Perſpicuity; leaving it to the Induſtry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he ſhall find neceſſary, with-

ou

Digitized by Google

out which no *Rules* can be ſufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wiſhed; but I frankly own, that I do not ſee how it can be made much ſhorter without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules*. However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have ſubjoined a more *Compendious Syntax*, conſiſting only of a few *Fundamental Rules*, which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Diſcretion of the Maſter ſhall direct him.

THE

Digitized by Google

THE RUDIMENTS OF THE Latin Tongue: OR *A plain and easy Introduction* TO Latin Grammar.

PARS PRIMA. *De Literis & Syllabis.*

Magister. QUOT sunt Literæ apud Latinos?

Discipulus. Quinque & viginti; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Vocales & Consonantes.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

D. Sex; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

PART FIRST. *Of* Letters *and* Syllables.

Master. HOW many Letters are there among the Latins?

Scholar. *Five and twenty*; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Vowels and Consonants.*

M. *How many Vowels are there?*

S. *Six*; a, e, i, o, u, y.

M. Quot

Digitized by Google

M. Quot ſunt conſonantes?

D Novemdecim; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. Quot ſunt diphthongi?

D. Quinque; *ae*, [vel æ] *oe*, [vel œ] *au, eu, ei*; ut *aetas*, vel *ætas, poena*, vel *pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

M. *How many Conſonant are there?*

S. *Nineteen*, b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. *How many Diphthong are there?*

S. *Five*; ae, [*or* æ] oe [*or* œ] au, eu, ei; *as* aetas, *or* ætas poena, *or* pœna, audio, euge hei.

NOTES.

GRAMMAR is the Art of ſpeaking any Language rightly; as *Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Engliſh*, &c.

Latin Grammar is The Art of ſpeaking rightly the *Latin Tongue.*

The *RUDIMENTS* of that Grammar Are plain and eaſy Inſtructions, teaching Beginners the firſt Principles, or the moſt common and neceſſary Rules of *Latin.*

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to theſe four Heads, I. Treating of *Letters.* II. Of *Syllables.* III. Of *Words.* IV. Of *Sentences.*

Theſe are naturally made up one of another; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A *Letter* is a Mark or Character repreſenting an uncompounded Sound.

K, Y, Z, are only to be found in Words originally *Greek*, and *H* by ſome is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J.* called *Jod* [or *Je*] and the *V.* called *Vau*, two Letters diſtinct from *I* and *U*, becauſe not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds are quite different; *J* ſounding like *G* before *E*, and *V* almoſt like *F.*

A *Vowel* is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itſelf.

A *Conſonant* is a Letter that cannot ſound without a Vowel.

A *Syllable* is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel: And any of the ſix Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Conſonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the moſt Part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it: Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwiſe, *viz*, 1. When *U* with any other Vowel comes after *G, Q* or *S, as in Lingua, Qui, Suadeo*; where the Sound of the *U* vaniſhes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong or double Vowel.

A *Diphthong* is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, ſo as both of them are heard.

Of *Diphthongs* three are *Proper*, viz. *au, eu, ei*, in which both Vowels are heard; and two *Improper*, viz. *æ, œ*, in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* ſimple.

Some, not without Reaſon, to theſe five Diphthongs, add other three; as, *ai* in *Maia*, *ei* in *Troia*, *yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpuia.*

Digitized by Google

PARS

PARS SECUNDA.
De Dictionibus.

M. QUot sunt Partes Orationis?

D. Octo; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium; Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

M. Quot sunt Indeclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*

PART SECOND.
Of Words.

M. HOW many Parts of Speech are there?

S. *Eight;* Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Declinable and Indeclinable.*

M. *How many are declinable?*

S. *Four;* Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. *How many are indeclinable?*

S. *Likewise four*; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A *Word*, [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight *Classes* called *Parts of Speech*: But some comprise them all under three Classes, *viz. Noun, Verb*, and *Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend also *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb* also *Prepositition, Interjection* and *Conjunction*. Others to these add a fourth *Class*, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending Adjectives under it, and restricting *Noun* to *Substantives* only. These by some are otherwise called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations* and *Particles*.

The declinable Parts of Speech are so called, because there is some Change made upon them, especially in their last Syllables: And this is what we call *Declension* or *declining* of Words. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last Syllable, on which these Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination* of Words.

These Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia, i. e. The Accidents* of Words.

These *Accidents* are commonly reckoned Six, *viz. Gender, Case, Number; Mood, Tense*, and *Person*. Of these, *Gender* and *Case* are peculiar to three of the declinable Parts of Speech, *viz. Noun, Pronoun* and *Participle*; and *Mood, Tense* and *Person* are peculiar to one of them, *viz. Verb*: And *Number* is common to them all.

NOTE 1. That *Person* may also be said to belong to Noun or Pronoun: But then it is not properly an Accident, because no Change is made by it in the Word.

Digitized by Google

NOTE 2. That *Figure*, *Species*, and *Comparison*, which ſome call *Accidents* do not properly come under that Name, becauſe the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. *See Chap.* IX.

NOTE 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun, and Participle, are in a ſtricter Senſe called *Declenſion* or *Declination* of the; and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation*.

CAP. I.

De Nomine.

M. QUomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Caſus, & Numeros.

M. Quot ſunt Genera?

D. Tria; *Maſculinum*, *Fœmininum* & *Neutrum*.

M. Quot ſunt Caſus?

D. Sex; *Nominativus*, *Genitivus*, *Dativus*, *Accuſativus*, *Vocativus* & *Ablativus*.

M. Quot ſunt Numeri?

D. Duo; *Singularis* & *Pluralis*.

M. Quot ſunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, *Quarta*, & *Quinta*.

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accuſativum & Vocativum ſimiles in utroque Numero: & hi Caſus in Plurali ſemper deſinunt in *a*.

2. Vocativus in Singulari plerumque, in Plurali ſemper, eſt ſimilis nominativo.

CHAP. I.

Of Noun.

M. HOW *is a Noun declined?*

S. *By Genders, Caſes, and Numbers.*

M. *How many Genders are there?*

S. *Three;* Maſculine, Feminine *and* Neuter.

M. *How many Caſes are there?*

S. *Six;* Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accuſative, Vocative *and* Ablative.

M. *How many Numbers are there?*

S. *Two;* Singular *and* Plural.

M. *How many Declenſions are there?*

S. *Five;* Firſt, Second, Third, Fourth *and* Fifth.

GENERAL RULES.

1. *Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accuſative and Vocative alike in both Numbers; And theſe Caſes in the Plural end always in* a.

2. *The Vocative for the moſt part in the Singular,* [and] *always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.*

3. Dativus

Digitized by Google

3. Dativus & Ablativus Pluris sunt similes.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent plurali.

3. *The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.*

4. *Proper Names for the most part want the Plural.*

A *NOUN* is that Part of Speech which signifies the Name or Quality of a Thing; as, *Homo*, a Man; *Bonus*, good.

A *Noun* is either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

A *Substantive Noun* is, That which signifies the Name of a Thing; as *Arbor*, a Tree; *Virtus*, Virtue; *Bonitas*, Goodness.

An *Adjective Noun* is that which signifies an Accident, Quality, or Property of a Thing; as, *Albus*, white, *Felix*, happy; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Substantive may be distinguished from an Adjective these two Ways: 1. A Substantive can stand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Adjective cannot without a Substantive; as, I can say *a Stone falls*, but I cannot say, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Adjective, it will make Sense; but if it be joined with a Substantive, it will make Nonsense: Thus we say, *A good Thing*, *A white Thing*; but we do not say *A Man Thing*, *A Beast Thing*.

A Substantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A *Proper Substantive* is, That which agrees to one particular Thing of a Kind; as *Virgilius*, a Man's Name; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name; *Scotia*, Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *Appellative Substantive* is, That which is common to a whole Kind of Things; as *Vir*, a Man; *Fœmina*, a Woman; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Urbs*, a City; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE, That when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an Appellative; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

GENDER in a natural Sense is the Distinction of Sex, or the Difference between Male and Female; But in a Grammatical Sense, we commonly understand by it, The Fitness that a *Substantive Noun* hath to be joined to an *Adjective* of such a *Termination*, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Hees* are of the Masculine, and the *Shees* of the Feminine Gender: But of Things without Life, and, where the Diversity of Sex is not considered, even of Things that have Life, some are of the Masculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gender, according to the Use of the best Authors of the *Latin* Tongue.

Besides these three principal Genders there are reckoned also other three less principal, which are nothing else but Compounds of the three former, *viz.* The Gender *Common to two*, the Gender *Common to three*, and the *Doubtful* Gender.

I. The *Common Gender*, or Gender common to two, [*Genus commune* or *Commune duûm*] is Masculine and Feminine; and belongs to such Nouns as agree to both Sexes; as, *Parens*, a Father or Mother; *Bos*, an Ox or Cow.

II. The *Gender Common to three*, [*Genus commune trium*] is Masculine, Feminine and Neuter, and belongs only to Adjectives. Whereof some have three Terminations, the first Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter; as, *Bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the first Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter; as, *Mollis*, *molle*, soft.

And

Digitized by Google

And ſome have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to a
of the three Genders; as *Prudens*, wiſe.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to ſuch Nouns as a
found in good Authors ſometimes in one Gender, and ſometimes in a
other; as *Dies*, a Day, Maſc. or Fem. *Vulgus* the Rabble, Maſc. or Ne
[*We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the* Epicene *or* Promiſc
ous Gender; *for, properly ſpeaking, there is no ſuch Gender diſtinct from t
three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed* Epicene Nouns, *that
ſome Names of Animals, in which the Diſtinction of Sex is either not at all,
very obſcurely conſidered; and theſe are generally of the Gender of their Termin
tion; as,* Aquila, *an Eagle, Femin. becauſe it ends in* a; Paſſer, *a Sparro
Maſcul. becauſe it ends in* er. (See *p.* 8. and 11.) *So* Homo, *a Man or W
man, Maſc.* Mancipium, *a Slave, Neut.* Anguis, *a Serpent, Doubtfu*
To diſtinguiſh theſe Genders we make uſe of theſe three Words, *Hi
hæc, hoc*, which are commonly, though improperly called *Articles*. H
is the Sign of the Maſc. *hæc* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; H
& hæc of the Common to two; *hic, hæc, hoc*, of the Common to three; *h
aut hæc*; *hic* aut *hoc*, &c. of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we underſtand the different Terminations that Nouns re
ceive in declining: So called from *cado* to fall, becauſe they naturall
fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Caſus rectu*
the ſtraight Caſe; as the other five are named *Obliqui*, crooked.

The *Singular NUMBER* denotes one ſingle Thing; as *Homo*, a Man
the *Plural* denotes more things than one; as *Homines*, Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declenſion of Latin
Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a ge
neral View of

The Declenſion *of* Engliſh Nouns.

I. The *Engliſh* Language hath the two *Genders* of Nature, *viz.* Ma
ſculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE*, ac
cording to the Difference of their Sex: And almoſt every Thing with
out Life is called *IT*. But becauſe all the Adjectives of this Languag
are of one Termination, it has no Occaſion for any other Genders.

II. The *Engliſh*, properly ſpeaking, has no Caſes, becauſe there is n
Alteration made in the Words themſelves, as in the Latin; but inſtea
thereof we uſe ſome little Words called *PARTICLES*.

Thus, the *Nominative Caſe* is the ſimple Noun itſelf: The Particle *O*
put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the *Genitive*: *TO* or *FOR* before i
makes the *Dative*: The *Accuſative* is the ſame with the *Nominative*
The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH, FROM
IN, BY*, &c.

NOTE 1. That when a Subſtantive comes before a Verb, it is calle
the Nominative; when it follows after a Verb active, without a Prepo
ſition interveening, it is called the Accuſative.

NOTE 2. That the Apoſtrophus or Sign ['] is not uſed in the Geni
tive Plural; as, *Mens Works, the Apoſtles Creed*.

NOTE 3. That *TO* the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative
are frequently omitted or underſtood.

Beſides theſe there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES*, which
ar

Digitized by Google

e commonly put before Substantive Nouns, *viz. A* [or *An* before a owel or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite*.

A or *An* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as, *Man*, that is, *One Man*. *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the me with *This* or *That*, and *These* or *Those*.

NOTE 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, nd Appellatives, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these rticles; as, *Man is mortal, i. e.* every Man; *God abhors Sin, i. e.* all ins: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, *&c.* frequently have *he*; as, *the Thames, the Britannia, the Alps*.

NOTE 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plu- al wants the Indefinite.

NOTE 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the Article is put before both; as, *A good Man, The good Man*: And the De- inite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; s, *The just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man*.

III. The *English* hath two *Numbers* as the Latin, and the Plural is ommonly made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as *Book, Books*.

EXC. 1. Such as end in *ch, sh, ss*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their ingular; as, *Church-es, Brush-es, Witness-es, Box-es*. Where it is to be oticed that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the ingular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce, ge, je, ze*; as, *Faces, Ages, Houses, Mazes*. The Reason of this pro- eeds from the near Approach these Terminations have in their Sound o an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. without the Addition of another Syllable. And for the same Reason, Verbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their hird Person Sing. of the present Tense.

EXC. 2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calf, Calves*; *Leaf, Leaves*; *Wife, Wives*: But not always; for *Hoof, Roof, Grief, Mischief, Dwarf, Strife, Muff*, &c. retain *f*. *Staff* has *Staves*.

EXC. 3. Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man, Men*; *Woman, Women, Child, Children*; *Chick, Chicken*; *Brother, Brothers* or *Brethren*; (which last is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

EXC. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die, Dice*; *Mouse, Mice*; *Louse, Lice*; *Goose, Geese*; *Foot, Feet*; *Tooth, Teeth*; *Penny, Pence*; *Sow, Sows*, and *Swine*; *Cow, Cows*, and *Kine*.

EXC. 5. Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep, Hose, Swine, Chicken, Pease, Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes*; *Mile* and *Miles*; *Horse* and *Horses*.

NOTE, That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry, Cherries*.

An *English Noun* is thus declined.

	A,	The		The
Singular.	Nom.	*King*,	Plural.	Nom. *Kings*,
	Gen. *of*	*King*,		Gen. *of* *Kings*,
	Dat. *to* [*for*]	*King*,		Dat. *to* [*for*] *Kings*,
	Acc.	*King*,		Acc. *Kings*,
	Voc. *O*	*King*,		Voc. *O*. *Kings*,
	Abl. *with, from, in, by,*	*King*.		Abl. *with, from, in, by,* *Kings*.

Digitized by Google

Prime

Prima Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Prima Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum ſingularem in æ Diphthongon.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Quatuor; *a, e, as, es*; ut, *Penna, Penelope, Æneas, Anchiſes.*

The firſt Declenſion

M. *HOW is the Firſt Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive and Dative ſingular in æ Diphthong.*

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Four*; a, e, as, es; *a*

Penna, *a Pen*, Fem.				Terminations.	
Sing.		*Plur.*			
Nom. penna,	*a pen,*	*Nom.* pennæ,	*pens,*	*a,*	*æ,*
Gen. pennæ,	*of a pen,*	*Gen.* pennarum,	*of pens,*	*æ,*	*arum,*
Dat. pennæ,	*to a pen,*	*Dat.* pennis,	*to pens,*	*æ,*	*is,*
Acc. pennam,	*a pen,*	*Acc.* pennas,	*pens,*	*am,*	*as,*
Voc. penna,	*O pen,*	*Voc.* pennæ,	*O pens,*	*a,*	*æ,*
Abl. penna,	*with a pen:*	*Abl.* pennis,	*with pens.*	*a,*	*is.*

¶ After the ſame Manner you may decline *Litera*, a Letter; *Via*, a Way; *Galea*, an Helmet; *Tunica*, a Coat; *Toga*, a Gown.

A is a Latin Termination, *e, as*, and *es*, are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Maſculine.

RULE, *Filia*, a Daughter; *Nata*, a Daughter; *Dea*, a Goddeſs; *Anima*, the Soul, with ſome others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to diſtinguiſh them from Maſculines in *us* of the ſecond Declenſion.

¶ In declining *Greek Nouns* obſerve the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have ſometimes their Accuſative [with the Poets] in *an*; as, *Æneas, Æneam* vel *Æenean*; [*Oſſa, Oſſam* vel *Oſſan.*]

2. Theſe in *es* have their Accuſative in *en*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e*; as,

Nom.	Anchiſes,	*Accuſ.*	Anchiſen,
Voc.	Anchiſe,	*Abl.*	Anchiſe.

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accuſative in *en*, their Dative, Vocative, and Ablative in *e*; as,

Nom.	Penelope,	*Gen.*	Penelopes,
Dat.	Penelope,	*Acc.*	Penelopen.
Voc.	Penelope,		
Abl.	Penelope.		

[*As to the Dotive of Words in* e, *I have followed* Probus *and* Priſcian *among the Ancients*; Lilly, Alvarus, Voſſius, Meſſieurs de Port Royal, Johnſon, &c. *among the Moderns. And tho' none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have obſerved three ſuch Datives*, viz. Cybele *in* Virg. Æn. XI. 768.

Digitized by Google

8. Penelope *in* Martial, Epig. XI. 8, 9. *and* Epigone *in* Reineſii Syntag. ſcrip. Claſſ. 14. Num. 85. *But* Diomedes *and* Diſpauter *ſeem to be of inion, that theſe Nouns have* æ *in their Dative. The Reaſon that moved the mer is, becauſe they thought it incongruous, that ſeeing Nouns in* e *generally follow Greek in all their other Caſes, they ſhould follow the Latin in their Dative on- eſpecially ſince their Ablative, which anſwers to the Greek Dative, ends in*

As on the contrary, they maintain, that if ſuch Nouns have æ *in their ative, it muſt come from a Nominative in* a; *of which there are ſome Ex- nples yet extant: And then they may likewiſe have their Accuſative in* am; , Penelopam, Circam, *in* Plautus, Lycambam *in* Terentianus Maurus. *Thus lenæ or* Helenes, Helenam *or* Helenen, *are frequently to be met with in oets; who alſo turn ſuch Words as commonly end in* a, *into* e *in the Nomina- ve and Vocative, when the Meaſure of their Verſe requires it. And here it ay not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in* es *have ſometimes eir Nominative and Vocative in* a, (*whence comes their Genitive and Dative æ:*) *And, if Mr.* Johnſon's *Citations are right, both* es *and* e *have ſome- imes their Accuſative in* em.]

Secunda Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Secunda Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum ſingula- em in *i*, & Dativum in *o*.

M. Quot habet Terminatio- ies?

D. Septem; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on;* ut,

The Second Declenſion.

M. *HOW is the Second Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive ſingular in* i, *and Dative in* o.

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Seven;* er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on; *as,*

Gener, a Son-in-law; *Vir*, a Man; *Satur*, full; *Dominus*, a Lord; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Synodos*, a Synod; *Albion*, the Iſland Albion, or Great Britain.

Gener, a Son-in-law, Maſc.

Sing.		*Plur.*		Terminations.	
Nom.	gener,	*Nom.*	generi,	*er, ir, us,*	*i,*
Gen.	generi,	*Gen.*	generorum,	*i,*	*orum,*
Dat.	genero,	*Dat.*	generis.	*o,*	*is,*
Acc.	generum,	*Acc.*	generos,	*um,*	*os,*
Voc.	gener,	*Voc.*	generi,	*er, ir, e,*	*i,*
Abl.	genero:	*Abl.*	generis.	*o:*	*is.*

After the ſame Manner you may decline *Puer*, a Boy; *Socer*, a Father-in-law; *Vir*, a Man, *&c.* But *Liber*, a Book; *Magiſter*, a Maſter; *Alexander*, a Man's Name, and moſt other Subſtantives in *er* loſe the *e* before *r*; Thus *Sing. Num.* Liber, *Gen.* libri, *Dat.* libro, *Accuſ.* librum, *Voc.* liber, *Abl.* libro. *Plur. Num.* libri, *Gen.* librorum, *&c.*

Digitized by Google

Dominus, *a Lord*, Masc.

Sing.		*Plur.*		*Thus*,
Nom.	dominus,	*Nom.*	domini,	Ventus, *the Wind.*
Gen.	domini,	*Gen.*	dominorum,	Oculus, *the Eye.*
Dat.	domino,	*Dat.*	dominis,	Fluvius, *a River.*
Acc.	dominum,	*Acc.*	dominos,	Puteus, *a Well.*
Voc.	domine,	*Voc.*	domini,	Focus, *a common Fire.*
Abl.	domino:	*Abl.*	dominis.	Rogus, *a Funeral Pile.*

Regnum, *a Kingdom*, Neut.

Sing.		*Plur.*		*Thus*,
Nom.	regnum,	*Nom.*	regna,	Templum, *a Church.*
Gen.	regni,	*Gen.*	regnorum,	Ingenium, *Wit.*
Dat.	regno,	*Dat.*	regnis,	Horreum, *a Barn.*
Acc.	regnum,	*Acc.*	regna,	Canticum, *a Song.*
Voc.	regnum,	*Voc.*	regna,	Jugum, *a Yoke.*
Abl.	regno:	*Abl.*	regnis.	

REGULÆ.

I. Nominativus in *us* facit Vocativum in *e*; ut, *Ventus*, *vente*.

II. Propria in *ius* perdunt *us* in Vocativo; ut, *Georgius*, *Georgi*.

RULES.

I. *The Nominative in* us *makes the Vocative in* e; *as*, Ventus, vente.

II. *Proper Names in* ius *lose* us *in the Vocative*; *as*, Georgius, Georgi.

Filius hath also *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus* in the Vocative, and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis*, than *Dei* and *Deis*.

The most common Terminations of the second Declension are *er* and *us* of the Masc. and *um* of the Neut. Gender.

There is only one Noun in *ir* of this Declension, *viz. Vir*, a Man, with its Compounds *Levir*, *Duumvir*, *Triumvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek Terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative.

These, with other Greek Nouns in *us*, have sometimes their Acc. in *on*.

[We have excluded the Termination *eus* from this Declension, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*, *Orphei*, *Orphea*, *Orpheu*: For when it is of the second Declension, it is *e-us*, of two Syllables, and so falls under the Termination *us*; *Orphe-us*, *Orphe-i*, (contracted *Orphei* and *Orphi*) *Orphe-o*, *Orphe-um*, (or *Orphe-on*) *Orphe-o*.]

Tertia Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoscitur Tertia Declinatio?

The Third Declension.

M. HOW is the Third Declension known?

D. Per

Digitized by Google

D. Per Genitivum singularem in *is* & Dativum in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes seu syllabas finales?

D. Septuaginta & unam.

M. Quot habet literas finales?

D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*; ut,

S. *By the Genitive singular in* is *and Dative in* i.

M. *How many Terminations or final Syllables hath it?*

S. *Seventy and one.*

M. *How many final Letters hath it?*

S. *Eleven*; a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x; *as,*

Diadema, a Crown; *Sedile*, a Seat; *Sermo*, Speech; *Lac*, Milk; *David*, a Man's Name; *Animal*, a living Creature; *Pecten*, a Comb; *Pater*, a Father; *Rupes*, a Rock; *Caput*, the Head; *Rex*, a King.

Sermo, *Speech*, Masc.

Sing.		*Plur.*		Terminations.	
Nom.	sermo,	*Nom.*	sermones,	*a, e, o,* &c.	*es, a,*
Gen.	sermonis,	*Gen.*	sermonum,	*is,*	*um, ium,*
Dat.	sermoni,	*Dat.*	sermonibus,	*i,*	*ibus,*
Acc.	sermonem,	*Acc.*	sermones,	*em,*	*es, a,*
Voc.	sermo,	*Voc.*	sermones,	*a, e, o,* &c.	*es, a,*
Abl.	sermone:	*Abl.*	sermonibus.	*e, i:*	*ibus.*

Sedile, *a Seat*, Neut.

Sing.		*Plur.*	
Nom.	sedile,	*Nom.*	sedilia,
Gen.	sedilis,	*Gen.*	sedilium,
Dat.	sedili,	*Dat.*	sedilibus,
Acc.	sedile,	*Acc.*	sedilia,
Voc.	sedile,	*Voc.*	sedilia,
Abl.	sedili:	*Abl.*	sedilibus.

As Sermo, *so most Substantives of this Declension in* a, o, c, d, n, t, x, er, or, ur, as, es, us; (*except their Acc. and Voc. when they are Neuters, or when they want the Plural Number.*) *Also* (*when they have more Syllables in their Gen. than Nom.*) *all Words in* es, *and most of those in* is.

Of the final Letters of the third Declension six are peculiar to it, *o, c, d, l, t, x*; the other five are common to other Declensions, *viz. a, e, n, r, s.*

The copious final Letters are, *o, n, r, s, x.*

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, ys, rs, ex.*

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have always an *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk; and *Halec*, a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare. There are only three Words in *t*, *viz. Caput*, the Head, *Sinciput*, the Forehead; *Occiput*, the Hind-head.

1. The Terminations, *er, or, os, o, n,*
2. The Terminations *io, do, go, as, es, is, ys, aus, x,* and *s* after a Consonant,
3. The Terminations *a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut,*

are Masculine, Feminine, Neuter.

But from these there are many Exceptions.

Digitized by Google

NOTE 1. That for the moſt Part the Genitive hath a Syllable more t the Nominative; and whereit is otherwiſe they generally end in *e, es,* o

NOTE 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the G muſt run through the other Caſes (except the Accuſative and Vocative ſ of Neuters;) as, *Thema, -atis, -ati, -ate,* a Theme; *Sanguis, -guinis,* Ble *Iter, -ineris,* a Journey; *Carmen, -minis,* a Verſe; *Judex, -dicis,* a Ju

REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e,* & Neutra in *al* & *ar,* habent *i* in Ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantùm in Ablativo, faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um.*

3. Quæ habent *i* tantùm, vel *e* aut *i* ſimul, faciunt *ium.*

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo ſingulari, habent *a* in Nominativo, Accuſativo & Vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia.*

RULES.

1. *Nouns in* e, *and Neut in* al *and* ar, *have* i *in the A lative.*

2. *Theſe which have* e *on in the Ablative, make their G nitive plural in* um.

3. *Theſe which have* i *only,* e *and* i *together, make* ium.

4. *Neuters which have* e *their Ablative ſing. have* a *the Nominative, Accuſativ and Vocative plural.*

5. *But theſe which have* i *the Ablative, make* ia.

RULES EXCEPTIONS in the Accuſative ſingular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accuſative; as *Vis, vim,* Strength *Tuſſis,* the Cough; *Sitis,* Thirſt; *Buris,* the Beam of a Plough; *Ravi* Hoarſeneſs; *Amuſſis,* a Maſon's Rule. To which add Names of River in *is*; as, *Tybris, Thameſis,* which the Poets ſometimes make in *in.*

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as, *Navis,* a Ship; *Puppis,* the Stern; *S caris,* an Ax; *Clavis,* a Key; *Febris,* a Fever; *Pelvis,* a Baſon; *Reſtis,* Rope; *Turris,* a Tower; *Navem* vel *navim,* &c.

2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative ſingular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accuſative have *i* in the Ablative; a *vis, vim, vi,* &c. Theſe that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*; as, *Navi, na vem,* vel *navim, nave* vel *navi.*

2. *Canalis, Vectis, Bipennis,* have *i*: *Avis, Amnis, Ignis, Unguis, Ru* and *Imber,* with ſome others, have *e* or *i*; but moſt commonly *e.*

3. Theſe Neuters in *ar* have *e*; *Far, Jubar, Nectar* and *Hepar*: *S* alſo has *ſale.*

3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as, is,* and *s* with a Conſonant before i have *ium*; as, *As, aſſium*; *Lis, litium*; *Urbs, urbium.*

2. Alſo Nouns in *es* and *is,* not increaſing in their Genitive; as, *vallis vallium*; *Rupes, rupium.* Except, *Panis, Canis, Vates,* and *Volucris.*

3. To which add *Caro, Cor, Cos, Dos, Mus, Nix, Nox, Linter, Sal, Os, Oſſis*

NOTE, That when the Genitive plural ends in *ium,* the Accuſativ frequently, inſtead of *es,* has *eis* or *is*; as, *omneis, parteis,* or *omnis, par tis,* for *omnes, partes.*

Digitized by Google

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have ſometimes their Genitive in *os*. And theſe are 1. Such as increaſe their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas*, *Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Briſeis*, *-eidis* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increaſe in *os* pure, *i. e.* with a Vowel before it; *Hereſis*, *eos* vel *-ios*, an Hereſy. 3. To theſe add *Sphyngos*, *Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE, That *is* is more frequent, except in the ſecond Kind, and Patronymicks of the firſt.

II. 1. Greek Words which increaſe their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (*i. e.* with a Conſonant before it) have frequently their Accuſative ſing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *Lampas*, *lampadis*, *lampada*, *lampadas*; alſo *Minos*, *Minois*, *Minoa*; *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troa*, *Troas*; *Heros*, *herois*, *heroa*, *heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whoſe Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accuſative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Hæreſis*, *-eos*, *hæreſim* or *-in*, *Chelys*, *-lyos*, a Lute; *chelym* or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is* which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, *Maſculines* have their Accuſative for the moſt part in *im* or *in*, ſeldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of; as, *Paris*, *Parim* vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*; *Feminines* have moſt commonly *dem* or *da*, and ſeldom *im* or *in*; as, *Briſeis*, *Briſeidem* vel *Briſeidà*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Caſes, as, *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Didonis*, *Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin Original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as, *Calchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Tiphy*, *Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and ſometimes *on* in their Genitive plural; as, *Epigrammatôn*, *Hereſiôn*) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have moſt frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plural; as, *Poëma*, *Poëmatis*, becauſe of old they ſaid *Poëmatum*, *-ti*. *Bos* has *boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Quarta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum ſingularem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; ut,

The Fourth Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Fourth Declenſion known?*

S. *By the Genitive ſingular in* us, *and the Dative in* ui.

M. *How many Terminations hath it?*

S. *Two;* us *and* u; *as,*

Fructus, *Fruit*; Cornu, *a Horn*.

	Fructus, *Fruit*; Maſc.		Terminations.
Sing.	*Nom.* fructus,	Plur. *Nom.* fructus,	*us*, *us*,
	Gen. fructus,	*Gen.* fructuum,	*us*, *uum*,
	Dat. fructui,	*Dat.* fructibus,	*ui*, *ibus*,
	Acc. fructum,	*Acc.* fructus,	*um*, *us*,
	Voc. fructus,	*Voc.* fructus,	*us*, *us*,
	Abl. fructu:	*Abl.* fructibus.	*u*: *ibus*.

Digitized by Google

Cornu,

Cornu, *an Horn*, Neut.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	cornu,	cornua,
Gen.	cornu,	cornuum,
Dat.	cornu,	cornibus,
Acc.	cornu,	cornua,
Voc.	cornu,	cornua,
Abl.	cornu:	cornibus.

As Fructus, *so* Vu
tus *the Countenance*, M
nus, *the Hand*, Fem. C
sus, *a Fall or Chance*.
As Cornu, *so* Gen
the Knee; Veru, *a Spi*
Tonitru, *Thunder*.

Nouns in *us* of this Declenſion are generally Maſculine, and theſe i
u all Neuter, and indeclinable in the ſingular Number.

RULE. Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative plura
viz. Arcus, a Bow; *Artus*, a Joint; *Lacus*, a Lake, *Acus*, a Needle; *Po
tus*, a Port or Harbour; *Partus*, a Birth; *Tribus*, a Tribe; *Veru*, a Spit

NOTE, That of old Nouns of this Declenſion belonged to the Third
and were declined as *Grus, gruis*, a Crane; thus, *Fructus, fructuis, fructu
fructuem, fructue*: *Fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructui
bus*. So that all the Caſes are contracted except the Dative ſing. an
Genitive plur. There are ſome Examples of the Genitive in *uis* yet ex
tant; as on the contrary there are ſeveral of the Dative in *u*.

The bleſſed Name JESUS *is thus declined.*

Domus, *an Houſe*, Fem. *is thus declined.*

	Sing.	Plur. mutatis.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Iesus,	*Nom.*	domus,	domus,
Gen.	Iesu,	*Gen.*	domus, *v.* -mi,	domorum, *v.*-uum,
Dat.	Iesu,	*Dat.*	domui, *v.* -mo,	domibus,
Acc.	Iesum,	*Acc.*	domum,	domos, *v.* -us,
Voc.	Iesu,	*Voc.*	domus,	domus,
Abl.	Iesu.	*Abl.*	domo:	domibus.

[NOTE, *That the Genitive* domi *is only uſed when it ſignifies*, At home; domo *the Dative is found in* Horace, *Epiſt.* I. 10. 13.]

Quinta Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum ſingularem in *ei*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe, *es*; ut, Res, *a Thing*, Fem.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	res,	res,
Gen.	rei,	rerum,
Dat.	rei,	rebus,
Acc.	rem,	res,
Voc.	res,	res,
Abl.	re:	rebus.

The Fifth Declenſion.

M. HOW *is the Fifth Declenſion known?*

S. By the Genitive and Dative ſingular in ei.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. One, namely, es; *as,*

Terminations.

Nom.	*es, es,*
Gen.	*ei, erum,*
Dat.	*ei, ebus,*
Acc.	*em, es,*
Voc.	*es, es,*
Abl.	*e: ebus.*

Nouns

Digitized by Google

Nouns of the fifth Declenſion are not above fifty, and are all Feminine, except *Dies*, a Day, Maſc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Maſc.

All Nouns of this Declenſion end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except theſe four; *Abies*, a Firtree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall, and *Quies* Reſt; which are of the Third.

Moſt Nouns of this Declenſion want the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declenſions.

1. The Genitive Plural of the firſt four is ſometimes contracted, eſpecially by Poets; as, *Cœlicolûm*, *Deûm*, *Menſûm*, *Currûm*; for *Cœlicolarum*, *Deorum*, *Menſium*, *Curruum*.

2. When the Genitive of the ſecond ends in *ii*, the laſt *i* is ſometimes taken away by Poets; as, *Tugurî* for *Tugurii*. We read alſo *Aulai* for *aulæ* in the Firſt, and *Fide* for *fides* in the Fifth; and ſo of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.

ADjectiva ſunt vel primæ & ſecundæ Declinationis, vel tertiæ tantùm.

Omnia adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (*a*) undecim) ſunt primæ & ſecundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, ſunt tertiæ.

Adjectiva primæ & ſecundæ habent Maſculinum in *us*, (*b*) vel *er*; Fœmininum ſemper in *a*, Neutrum ſemper in *um*; ut,

The Declenſion of Adjectives.

ADjectives are either of the Firſt and Second Declenſion, or of the Third only.

All Adjectives having three Terminations (except eleven) are of the Firſt and Second: But theſe which have one or two Terminations, are of the Third.

Adjectives of the Firſt and Second have their Maſculine in us, *or* er; *their Feminine always in* a, *and their Neuter always in* um; *as*,

Bonus, *bona*, *bonum*, good, *Tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, tender.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

	Sing.				*Plur.*			
Nom.	bon-us,	-a,	-um,	*Nom.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Gen.	bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	*Gen.*	bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat.	bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	*Dat.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc.	bon-um,	-am,	-um,	*Acc.*	bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc.	bon-e,	-a,	-um,	*Voc.*	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Abl.	bon-o,	-a,	-o:	*Abl.*	bon-is,	-is,	-is.

(*a*) Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *celeber*, *ſaluber*, *volucer*, *compeſter*, *equeſter*, *pedeſter*, *paluſter*, *ſilveſter*; which are of the Third, and have their Maſculine in *er* or *is*, their Feminine in *is*, and Neuter in *e*.

(*b*) For *ſatur*, full, was of old *ſaturus*.

Tener,

Digitized by Google

Tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender*.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*N.* ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	*G.* ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	*D.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	*A.* ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	*V.* ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero:	*A.* ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three Substantives of the same Termination and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener* like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera* like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum* like *regnum*. Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro, lib.* 3. *de Anal.* decline every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser, -era, -erum* wretched; *liber, -era, -erum*, free; and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer*. Others lose it; as, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*, fair; *niger, -gra, -grum*, black.

These following Adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, *or* one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether, with its Compounds; *uterque*, both; *uterlibet, utervis*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius* and Dative in *i*.

Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.

Adjectives of the third Declension.

1. *Unius Terminationis.*

1. Of one Termination.

Felix, *happy*.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*N.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	*G.* fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	*D.* fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	*A.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	*V.* fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, *vel*	-ici, *&c.*		*A.* fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

2. *Duarum Terminationum.*

2. Of two Terminations.

Mitis, mite, *meek*.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*N.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	*G.* mitium,	mitium	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	*D.* mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	*A.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	*V.* mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti:	*A.* mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

Mitior,

Digitized by Google

Mitior, mitius, *meeker*.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*N.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	*G.* miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	*D.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	*A.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*V.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
miti-ore *vel* -ori, *&c.*			*A.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

3. *Trium Terminationum:* 3. Of three Terminations:

Acer *vel* acris, acris, acre, *Sharp.*

Sing.			*Plur.*		
a-cer *vel* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
a-cer *vel* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
a-cri,	-cri,	-cri:	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

REGULÆ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in Ablativo singulari.

2. At si neutrum sit in *e*, Ablativus habet *i* tantùm.

3. Genitivus pluralis definit in *ium*; & Neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi & Vocativi, in *a*.

4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ *um* & *a* postulant.

RULES.

1. *Adjectives of the Third Declension have* e *or* i *in the Ablative Singular.*

2. *But if the Neuter be in* e, *the Ablative has* i *only.*

3. *The Genitive plural ends in* ium; *and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative in* ia.

4. *Except Comparatives, which require* um *and* a.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvenis, Senex* and *Pauper*, have *e* in the Ablat. Sing. and consequently *um* in the Gen. Plur.

2. *Compos, Impos, Consors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener* and *Puber*; also Compounds ending in *ceps, fex, pes*, and *corpor*; as, *Princeps, Artifex, Bipes, Tricorpor*, have *um*, not *ium*.

NOTE, That all these have seldom the Neut[illegible] never almost the Neut. Plur. in the Nom. and Accus. To [illegible] *Memor*, which has *memori* and *memorum*; and *Locuples*, which has *locupletium*; also, *Deses, Reses, Hebes, Perpes, Præpes, Teres, Concolor, Versicolor*; which being hardly to be met with in the Genit. Plur. 'tis a Doubt whether they should have *um* or *ium*, though I incline most to the former.

Digitized by Google

3. *Par* has *pari*; *vetus, vetera, & veterum*; *Plus* (which hath only the Neut. in the Sing.) has *plure*, and *plures, plura* (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives and Adjectives in *ns*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and Participles in the Ablatives called *Absolute* have generally *e*; as, *Carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i*; as *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put substantively, have oftimes *e*; as, *Affinis, Familiaris, Rivalis, Sodalis*, &c. So *Par*, a Match as, *Cum pare quaque suo coëunt*. Ovid.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE *Ordinal* and *Multiplicative* Numbers (see Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The *Distributive* wants the Singular, as also doth the *Cardinal*, except *Unus*, which is declined as in *p.* 16. and hath the Plural when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Unæ literæ*, one Letter; *Una mœnia*, one Wall; or when several articulars are considered complexly as making one Compound; as *Unî sex dies, i. e.* One Space of six Days; *Una vestimenta. i. e.* One Suit of Apparel. *Plaut.*

Duo and *tres* are declined after this Manner:

Plur.	*Nom.* duo,	duæ,	duo,
	Gen. duorum,	duarum,	duorum,
	Dat. duobus,	duabus,	duobus,
	Acc. duos *vel*-o,	duas,	duo,
	Voc. duo,	duæ,	duo,
	Abl. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.

Plur.	*Nom.* tres,	tres,	tria,
	Gen. trium,	trium,	trium,
	Dat. tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
	Acc. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Voc. tres,	tres,	tria,
	Abl. tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

Ambo, Both, is declined as *Duo*.

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille* they are declined thus, *Ducenti, ducentæ, ducenta*; *ducentorum, ducentarum, ducentorum*, &c.

4. As to *Mille, Varro*, and all the Grammarians after him, down to the last Age, make it (when it is put before a Genitive Plural) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plural declined, *Millia, millium, millibus*; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius*, and after him *Gronovius*, contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural; and under that Termination of all Cases and Genders; but that it hath two Neuters, *hæc Mille*, and *hæc Millia*, that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Genit. *Multitudo, Numerus, Manus, Pecunia, Pondus, Spatium, Corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this Sentiment; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the most accurate *Perizonius* incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the Declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. [illegible] *examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declensions; as* Dom[illegible]*tus, a just Lord*; Penna bona, *a good Pen*; Ingenium eximium, *an excellent Wit*: *Afterwards let them be different in one or both; as*, Puer probus, *a good Boy*; Lectio facilis, *an easy Lesson*; Poëta optimus, *an excellent Poet*; Fructus dulcis, *sweet Fruit*; Dies festus, *a Holy Day*, &c. *And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write either in the School, or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.* Of

Of IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme.

IRREGULAR NOUNS are

1. **Defective.**
   - 1. Substantives, Wanting
     - 1. *Number*, { Sing. as, *Liberi, Minæ, Arma.* / Plur. as, *Aër, Humus, Ærumn.* }
     - 2. *Cases*, { Nom. and Voc. Sing. as *Ditionis.* / Gen. Sing. as *Chaos.* / Dat. Sing. as *Plus.* / Voc. Sing. as *Ego.* / Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as, *Mel.* }
     - or having only { Three; as, *Dica, dicam, dicas.* / Two; as, *Suppetiæ, Suppetias.* / One; as, *Dicis, Inficias, Nolïu.* }
   - 2. Adjectives, Wanting
     - 1. *Gender*, { Masc. as, *Cætera, cæterum.* / Fem. as, *Quisquis, quicquid.* / Neut. as, *Compos.* / Masc. and Fem. as, *Plus.* / Masc. and Neut. as, *Sicelis.* / Fem. and Neut. as, *Tres.* }
     - 2. *Number*, { Plur. as, *Unusquisque.* / Sing. as, *Centum.* }
     - 3. *Case*, { Voc. as, *Nullus.* / Dat. and Abl. as, *Tantundem.* }
     - or having the { Voc. only; as, *Mafte, Matti.* }

2. **Variable.**
   - 1. Too much,
     - In *Gender* having *Sing.* { Masc. / Masc. / Fem. / Neut. / Neut. / Neut. } and *Plur.* { Neut. as, *Mænalus, Mænala.* / Masc. & Neut. as, *Locus, -ci*, and *-ca.* / Neut. as, *Carbasus, Carbasa.* / Masc. as, *Cœlum, cœli.* / Fem. as, *Epulum, epulæ.* / Masc. & Neut. as, *Frenum, -ni* & *-na.* }
     - In *Declension* being of the { 2. and 1. as, *Delicium, deliciæ.* / 2. and 4. as, *Laurus, -ri*, and *-rus.* / 3. and 2. as, *Vas, -sis*; *-sa, -sorum.* }
   - 2. Too little, as, *Indeclinables*, { altogether; as, *Fas.* / in the Sing. as, *Cornu.* }

3. **Redundant.**
   - In *Termination* { only; as, *Helena, Helene.* / and Gender; as, *Tignus, tignum.* / and Decl. as, *Materia, materies.* }
   - In *Gender* { Gend. and Decl. as, *Æther, æthra.* / only; as, *hic & hoc Vulgus.* }
   - In *Declension* { only; as, *Fames, famis*, of the 3d, Abl. *fame*, of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always long with the Poets. }

Digitized by Google

NOTE, 1. That the *Defective* Nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE, 2. That these which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Defective*, and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*, E. G. *Cœli, Cœlorum*, comes not from *Cœlum*, but from *Cœlus*; and *Vasa, Vasorum*, not from *vas, vasis*, but from *vasum, vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives Laws to all Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retained the Plural; and so of others.

De Comparatione.

M. QUOT sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus, Comparativus* & *Superlativus*.

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi Gradus?

D. Positivus est Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantùm; Comparativus est semper Tertiæ; Superlativus semper Primæ & Secundæ.

M. Unde formatur Comparativus Gradus?

D. A proximo casu Positivi in *i*, addendo pro masculino & fœminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro neutro; ut,

Doctus, learned, Gen. *docti*, *doctior*, & *doctius*, more learned; *Mitis*, meek, *Dat. miti*, *mitior* & *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur Superlativus?

D. 1. Si Positivus desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur addendo *rimus*; ut,

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *pauperrimus*, most poor.

2. Si Positivus non desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo *simus*; ut,

Of Comparison.

M. HOW many Degrees of *Comparison are there?*

S. *Three; the* Positive, Comparative *and* Superlative.

M. *Of what Declension are these Degrees?*

S. *The Positive is an Adjective of the First and Second Declension, or Third only; the Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative always of the First and Second.*

M. *Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?*

S. *From the next Case of the Positive in* i, *by adding for the Masculine and Feminine the Syllable* or, *and* us *for the Neuter; as,*

M. *Whence is the Superlative formed?*

S. 1. *If the Positive ends in* er, *the Superlative is formed by adding* rimus; *as,*

2. *If the Positive ends not in* er, *the Superlative is formed from the next Case in* i, *by adding* simus; *as,*

Gen.

Digitized by Google

Gen. *Docti, doctissimus,* most learned: Dat. *Miti, mitissimus,* most meek.

By Grammatical COMPARISON we understand three Adjective Nouns, of which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with it, that is, heightening or lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely; as, *Durus,* hard; *Parvus,* little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality; as, *Durior,* harder, *Minor,* less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high or very low Degree; as, *Durissimus,* hardest, *or* most hard; *Minimus,* very little, *or* least.

The Positive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us*; the Superlative always in *mus, ma, mum.*

[† *The positive, properly speaking, is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together: However it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon and formed from it.*]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *est* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the Comparative by the Word *more,* and the Superlative by *most* or *very* put before it.

And for the like Reason, the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis,* and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime,* put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it; as *Pius,* godly; *Arduus,* high; *Idoneus,* fit; tho' not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus:	*Good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus:	*Evil,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maximus:	*Great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	minor,	minimus:	*Little,*	*less,*	*least.*

Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum: *much, more, most.*

2. Facilis, *easy*; Humilis, *low*; Similis, *like*; make their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus*; thus, *facillimus, humillimus, simillimus.*

3. *Exter,* outward; *Citer,* hither; *Superus,* above; *Inferus,* below; *Posterus,* behind, have regular Comparatives; but their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *extimus,*) uttermost; *citimus,* hithermost; *supremus* (or *summus,*) uppermost, highest, last; *infimus* (or *imus,*) lowest; *postremus* (or *postumus*) latest, or last.

4. Compounds in *Dicus, Loquus, Ficus,* and *Volus,* have *entior* and *entissimus*; as *Maledicus,* one that raileth; *Magniloquus,* one that boasteth; *Beneficus,* Beneficent; *Malevolus,* Malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Participles or Nouns in *ens.* Besides the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio,* are very rare, and *Terence* has *Mirificissimus,* and *Plautus* has *Mendaciloquius.*

5. *Prior,* former, has *Primus,* first; *Ulterior,* farther, *Ultimus,* farthest or last; *Propior,* nearer, *Proximus,* nearest or next; *Ocior,* swifter, *Ocissimus,*

mus, swifteſt; their Poſitives being out of uſe, or quite wanting. *Proximus* has alſo another Comparative formed from it, *viz. Proximior.*

6. There are alſo a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increaſed, which yet want one, or more of theſe Degrees of Compariſon; as, *Almus*, gracious, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, moſt holy; without the Comp. *Anterior*, former, without Poſtr. and Superl.

¶ *Theſe three Degrees of Compariſon being nothing elſe but three diſtinct Adjectives, may be declined either ſeverally each by itſelf, or jointly together; Reſpect ſtill being had to their Declenſions. But the firſt Way is much eaſier, and will anſwer all the Purpoſes of Compariſon as well as the other.*

CAP. II.
De Pronomine.

M. QUOT ſunt Pronomina † ſimplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipſe, Iſte, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noſter, Veſter; Noſtras, Veſtras,* & *Cujas.*

¶ Ex his tria ſunt Subſtantiva, *Ego, Tu, Sui;* reliqua quindecim ſunt Adjectiva.

CHAP. II.
Of Pronoun.

M. *HOW many ſimple Pronouns are there?*

S. *Eighteen;* Ego, Tu, Sui; Ille, Ipſe, Iſte, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noſter, Veſter; Noſtras, Veſtras, *and* Cujas.

¶ *Of theſe three are Subſtantives,* Ego, Tu, Sui; *the other fifteen are Adjectives.*

Ego, *I.*

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	ego, *I,*	*Nom.*	nos, *we,*
Gen.	mei, *of me,*	*Gen.*	noſtrum *vel* noſtri, *of us,*
Dat.	mihi, *to me,*	*Dat.*	nobis, *to us,*
Acc.	me, *me,*	*Acc.*	nos, *us,*
Voc.	———	*Voc.*	———
Abl.	me, *with me:*	*Abl.*	nobis, *with us.*

Tu, *Thou,*

Sing.		Plur.	
N.	tu, *thou,*	*N.*	vos, *ye,* [*you,*]
G.	tui, *of thee,*	*G.*	veſtrum *vel* veſtri *of you,*
D.	tibi, *to thee,*	*D.*	vobis, *to you,*
A.	te, *thee,*	*A.*	vos, *you,*
V.	tu, *O thou,*	*V.*	vos, *O ye,* [*you,*]
A.	te, *with thee:*	*A.*	vobis, *with you.*

or *you,*

Sui,

ee Chap. IX.

Digitized by Google

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*

N.		*N.*	
G.	sui, *of himself*, &c.	*G.*	sui, *of themselves*,
D.	sibi, *to himself*,	*D.*	sibi, *to themselves*,
A.	se, *himself*,	*A.*	se, *themselves*,
V.		*V.*	
A.	se, *with himself*:	*A.*	se, *with themselves*.

A PRONOUN is an irregular Kind of Noun: *Or*, it is a Part of Speech which has Respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun; as instead of our Name, I say, *Tu*, Thou *or* You; instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I say, *Ille fecit*, He did it, *viz.* James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mibi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi*.

NOTE, 2. That of old the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostrorum* and *Nostrarum*; of *Tu*, *Vestrorum* and *Vestrarum* (of which there are several Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*.

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, and *Nostri* and *Vestri* after other Nouns, and Verbs; tho' there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, even in Cicero himself, as *Vossius* shews.

Ille, illa, illud, *He, she, that*, or *it*.

Sing.	*N.*	ille, illa, illud,	*Plur.*	*N.*	illi, illæ, illa,
	G.	illius, illius, illius,		*G.*	illorum, illarum, illorum,
	D.	illi, illi, illi,		*D.*	illis, illis, illis,
	A.	illum, illam, illud,		*A.*	illos, illas, illa,
	V.	ille, illa, illud,		*V.*	illi, illæ, illa,
	A.	illo, illa, illo:		*A.*	illis, illis, illis.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *he himself, she herself, itself*; and iste, ista, istud, *he, she, that*, are declined as *ille*, save only that *ipse* hath *ipsum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *This*.

Sing.	*N.*	hic, hæc, hoc,	*Plur.*	*N.*	hi, hæ, hæc,
	G.	hujus, hujus, hujus,		*G.*	horum, harum, horum,
	D.	huic, huic, huic,		*D.*	his, his, his,
	A.	hunc, hanc, hoc,		*A.*	hos, has, hæc,
	V.	hic, hæc, hoc,		*V.*	hi, hæ, hæc,
	A.	hoc, hac, hoc:		*A.*	his, his, his.

Is, ea, id, *He, she, it* or *that*.

Sing.	*N.*	is, ea, id,	*Plur.*	*N.*	ii, eæ, ea,
	G.	ejus, ejus, ejus,		*G.*	eorum, earum, eorum,
	D.	ei, ei, ei,		*D.*	iis, *vel* eis,
	A.	eum, eam, id,		*A.*	eos, eas, ea,
	V.	—— —— ——		*V.*	—— —— ——
	A.	eo, ea, eo:		*A.*	iis, *vel* eis.

Qui-

Digitized by Google

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid, *Who, which, what?*

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	quis,	quæ,	quod *vel* quid,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quorum,	quarum,	quorum
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* queis *vel* quibus,		
A.	quem,	quam,	quod *vel* quid,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A.	quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.* queis *vel* quibus.		

Qui, quæ, quod, *Who, which, that.*

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	*N.* qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.* quorum,	quarum,	quorum
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.* queis *vel* quibus,		
A.	quem,	quam,	quod,	*A.* quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	*V.* ——	——	——
A.	quo,	qua,	quo:	*A.* queis *vel* quibus.		

Meus, my, *or* mine; *Tuus*, thy, *or* thine; *Suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *Bonus*, *-a*, *-um*. And *Noster*, our, *or* ours; *Vester*, your, *or* yours, like *Pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the First and Second Declension. But *Tuus*, *Suus*, and *Vester* want the Vocative; *Noster* and *Meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi*, (and sometimes *meus*) in the Masc. Sing.

Nostras, of our Country; *Vestras*, of your Country; *Cujas*, of what or which Country, are declined like *Felix*, of the Third Declension, Gen. *Nostratis*, Dat. *Nostrati*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, or address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence of which Rule many Nouns, as, *Nullus*, *Nemo*, *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quot*, &c. and several Pronouns, as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative; but not so many either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reason we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Hic* and *Idem*, there in following the Judgment of the great *Vossius*, *Messieurs de Port Royal* and *Johnson*, which they support by the following Authorities:

Esto nunc, Sol, testis, & hæc mihi terra precanti. Virg. Æn. 12.
Tu mihi libertas illa paterna veni. Tibul. lib. 2. El. 4.
O nox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. Cic. pro Flacc.
Ipse meas æther accipe summe preces. Ovid. in Ibin.

And the Vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid Met. 15.

——————*quique fuisti*
Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius esto.

Though all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, *viz.* *Tu*, *Meus*, *Noster*, *Nostras*, to have the Vocative.

NOTE, 2. That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*; as, Cic. *Qui tantus fuit labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

NOTE

Digitized by Google

NOTE, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod*, *Quodvis*, *Quodnam*, &c. are uſed when they agree with a Subſtantive in the ſame Caſe; *Id* with its Compounds, *Aliquid*, *Quidvis*, *Quiddam*, &c. either have Subſtantive expreſt, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that theſe laſt are commonly reckoned Subſtantives. But that *quid* as well as *Quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly ſhews; otherwiſe we ſhall make *Multum*, *Plus*, *Tantum*, *Quantum*, &c. alſo Subſtantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet moſt Grammarians agree to Adjectives, having the common Word *Negotium* underſtood.

NOTE, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. *Johnſon* evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

NOTE, 5. That *Noſtras*, *Veſtras* and *Cujas* are declined like *Gentile* or *Rationale* Nouns in *as* of the Third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a Man, Woman *or* Thing, of or belonging to the Town of *Arpinum*, *Fidenæ*, or *Privernum*, and may have the Neut. as well as theſe: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv. Bellum Privernas*; ſo *Colum.* has *Arbuſtum noſtras*, and *Cic. Noſtratia verba*) contrary to what *Linacer* teaches.

[*I paſs over taking notice, that in old Authors, eſpecially* Plautus, *we find* quis *and* quiſquis *ſometimes of the Femin. Gender*; mis *and* tis *for* mei *and* tui; hiſce *for* hi; hibus, ibus, *for* his, iis; illæ, ipſæ, iſtæ, quæ *in the Gen. Dat. Sing. Fem.* em *for* eum; iſtes *for* iſtos; quoius, quoi, *for* cujus, cui; *becauſe they are extraordinary.*]

Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with ſome other Word or Syllable. In theſe *Quis* is ſometimes the firſt, and ſometimes the laſt Part of the Word compounded: But *Qui* is always the firſt.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put firſt, are *Quiſnam*, who? *Quiſpiam*, *Quiſquam*, any one; *Quiſque*, every one; *Quiſquis*, whoſoever: Which are thus declined,

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quiſnam,	quænam, quodnam *vel* quidnam;	cujuſnam,	cuinam,
Quiſpiam,	quæpiam, quodpiam *vel* quidpiam;	cujuſpiam,	cuipiam,
Quiſquam,	quæquam, quodquam *vel* quidquam;	cujuſquam,	cuiquam,
Quiſque,	quæque, quodque *vel* quidque;	cujuſque,	cuique,
Quiſquis,	– – – quidquid *vel* quicquid;	cujuſcujus,	cuicui.

And ſo forth in their other Caſes, according to the ſimple *Quis*. But *Quiſquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nominat. and Accuſ. *Quiſquam* has alſo *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quemquam*, without the Fem. The Plural is ſcarcely uſed.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put laſt, are *Aliquis*, ſome; *Ecquis*, who? To which ſome add *Nequis*, *Siquis* and *Numquis*; but theſe are more frequently read ſeparately, *ne quis*, *ſi quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined,

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Aliquis,	aliqua, aliquod *vel* aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,
Ecquis,	ecqua *vel* ecquæ, ecquod *vel* ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui,
Si quis,	ſi qua, ſi quod, *vel* ſi quid,	ſi cujus,	ſi cui,
Ne quis,	ne qua, ne quod *vel* ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui,
Num quis,	num qua, num quod *vel* num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

NOTE, That theſe, and only theſe, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. and Accuſ. Plur. Neut.

Digitized by Google

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicunque*, whosoever; *Quidam*, so *Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one, whom you please; and are thus declined.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quicunque,	quæcunque, quodcunque;	cujuscunque,	cuicunq
Quidam,	quædam, quoddam *vel* quiddam;	cujusdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet,	quælibet, quodlibet *vel* quidlibet;	cujuslibet,	cuilibet,
Quivis,	quævis, quodvis *vel* quidvis;	cujusvis,	cuivis.

Some of these are twice compounded; as *Ecquisnam*, Who? *Unusquisque*, Every one. The first is scarce declined beyond its Nom. and t second wants the Plur.

Note, 1. That all these Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quisqu Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Id. Voss.* p. 33.

Note, 2. That all these Compounds have seldom or never *queis*, b *quibus* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

Note, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* vel *quiddam* i the Accus. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the Genit. Plu *n* being put instead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the same Re son in these Cases of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among compound Pronouns *Ego*, *Tu* and *Sui*, with *Ipse* but in the best Books they are generally read separately; which seems ne cessary, because of *te ipse* and *se ipse* where the two Words are of differen Cases.

III. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted int *Idem*, the same, which is thus declined.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
Nom. Idem,	eadem,	idem,	*Nom.* iidem,	eædem,	eadem.
Gen. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,	*Gen.* eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem
Dat. eidem,	eidem,	eidem,	*Dat.* eisdem *vel* iisdem,		
Acc. eundem,	eandem,	idem,	*Acc.* eosdem,	easdem,	eadem,
Voc. idem,	eadem,	idem,	*Voc.* iidem,	eædem,	eadem.
Abl. eodem,	eadem,	eodem:	*Abl.* eisdem *vel* iisdem.		

IV. Most of the other compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cases and Genders; as,

1. Of *iste* and *hic* is compounded, Nom. *Isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc* vel *isthuc*, Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc* vel *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *isthæc*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *eccos*, *eccas*: And from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*, in the Accusatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *hic*, *iste*, and *quis*, are compounded these Genitives, *Ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *cujusmodi*; and sometimes with the Syllable *ce* put in the Middle, *ejuscemodi*, *hujuscemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quicum*, or *quocum*, and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some Pronouns compounded with these syllabical Adjections, *met*, *te*, *se*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed, and emphatical, as, *Egomet*, *tute*, *hujuste*, *meapte*, *hircine*.

REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State* (as the *English* Grammarians call it) we use, *I*, *Thou*, *He*, *She*, *We*, *Ye*, *They*, and *Who*: But in the other Cases (which they name the *Following State*) we use *Me*, *Thee*, *Him*, *Her*, *Us*, *You*, *Them*, and *Whom*,

Digitized by Google

a. W

2. When we ſpeak of a *Perſon*, we uſe *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a Queſtion or not; as, *Who did it? The Man who did it.* But if we ſpeak of a *Thing* with a Queſtion, we uſe *What?* as, *What Book is that?* Without a Queſtion we uſe *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently underſtood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often uſed, even without a Queſtion, inſtead of *The thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you deſign*, i. e. *The Thing which*, or *that which* you deſign. As on the contrary, when it refers to ſome particular Thing mentioned before, we make uſe of *which*, even with a Queſtion; as, *Give me the Book. Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. *This* makes in the Plural *Theſe*, and *That* makes *Thoſe*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently uſed inſtead of *Who*, *Whom*, or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you, The Man that we ſaw, The Book that I lent you.*

4. We uſe *My*, *Thy*, *Her*, *Our*, *Your*, *Their*, when they are joined with Subſtantives, or the Word *Own*; and *Mine*, *Thine*, *Hers*, *Ours*, *Yours*, *Theirs*, when the Subſtantive is left out or underſtood; as, *My Book*, *This Book is mine*, &c.

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Subſtantive beginning with a Vowel, we ſometimes uſe *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *My Eye*, or *Mine Eye*; *Thy own*, or *Thine own.*

5. We often uſe *Here*, *There*, *Where*, compounded with theſe Particles, *Of*, *By*, *Upon*, *About*, *In*, *With*, inſtead of *This*, *That*, *Which*, and *What*, with theſe ſame Particles; as, *Hereof*, *Hereby*, *Hereupon*, *Hereabouts*, *Herein*, *Herewith*; for *Of this*, *By this*, *Upon this*, *About this Place*, *In this*, *With this*, &c.

6. *Whoſe* and *Its* are Genitives, inſtead of, *Of whom*, *Of it*; and it is a Fault to uſe *Its* for *'Tis* or *it is*, as ſome do.

CAP. III.
De Verbo.

M. QUomodo declinatur Verbum?

D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros, & Perſonas.

M. Quot ſunt Voces?

D. Duæ; *Activa* & *Paſſiva.*

M. Quot ſunt Modi?

D. Quatuor; *Indicativus*, *Subjunctivus*, *Imperativus* & *Infinitivus.*

M. Quot ſunt Numeri?

CHAP. III.
Of Verb.

M. HOW *is a Verb declined?*

S. *By Voices, Moods, Tenſes, Numbers, and Perſons.*

M. *How many Voices are there?*

S. *Two; the* Active *and* Paſſive.

M. *How many Moods are there?*

S. *Four*; Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative *and* Infinitive.

M. *How many Numbers are there?*

Digitized by Google

D. Duo; *Singularis & Pluralis.*

M. Quot ſunt tempora?

D. Quinque; *Præſens, Præteritum-imperfectum, Præteritum-perfectum, Præteritum-pluſquamperfectum & Futurum.*

M. Quot ſunt perſonæ?

D. Tres; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia.*

S. *Two;* Singular *and* Plural.

M. *How many Tenſes are there?*

S. *Five;* the Preſent, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect *and* the Future.

M. *How many Perſons are there?*

S. *Three;* Firſt, Second, Third.

A VERB is *a Part of Speech which ſignifies to be, to do, or to ſuffer.* Or, *a Verb is that Part of Speech which expreſſes what is affirmed or ſaid of Things.* A Verb may be diſtinguiſhed from any other Part of Speech theſe two Ways. 1. A Verb being the moſt neceſſary and eſſential Part of a Sentence, without which it cannot ſubſiſt, whatever Word with a Subſtantive Noun makes full Senſe, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which does not make full Senſe with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or IT SHALL before it makes Senſe, is a Verb, otherwiſe not.

I. In moſt Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in *o*, and the PASSIVE in *or*. The former expreſſes what is done by the Nominative or Perſon before it: The latter what is ſuffered by or done to the Nominative or Perſon before it; as, *Amo*, I love; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The Moods are divided into *Finite* and *Infinite*. The firſt three, *viz.* the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive* and *Imperative*, are called FINITE, becauſe they have certain fixt Terminations anſwering to certain Perſons both ſingular and plural. The laſt is called INFINITIVE or INFINITE, becauſe it is not confined to one Number or Perſon more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies poſitively; as, *Amo*, I love; *Non Amo*, I do not love: Or elſe asks a Queſtion; as, *An amas?* Doſt thou love? *Annon amas?* Doſt thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the ſame Sentence, either going before or coming after, as, *Si me ametis præcepta mea ſervate*, If ye love me keep my Commandments.

[*This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods*, viz. *the* Optative, *the* Subjunctive *more ſtrictly taken, and the* Potential. 1. *It is called* OPTATIVE, *when a Word importing a* Wiſh, *as*, Utinam, *Would to God*, O ſi, *O if, goes before it.* 2. *It is named* SUBJUNCTIVE, *when it is ſubjoined to ſome other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becoming Indefinites.* (See Chap. IX.) 3. *It is called* POTENTIAL, *when with the ſimple Affirmation of the Verb is alſo ſignified ſome Modification or Affection of it, ſuch as a* Power, Poſſibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, *&c. The Signs whereof in our Language are* May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should *and* Had, (*for* Would have *or* Should have; *as, they had repented,* for *would have.*) *But becauſe the Terminations of theſe Moods are the ſame, we have comprehended them all under one,* viz. *the* Subjunctive, *to which with ſmall Difficulty they*

Digitized by Google

they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative *Mood; nay a* Volitive *and* Debitive *which is commonly included in the* Potential. *As for the* Optative, *'tis plain that the Wish is not in the Verb itself, (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb* Opto, *which is understood, with* ut, uti *or* utinam, *which really signify no more but* That. *And 'tis very probable that in like Manner some Verb, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the* Potential *Mood, such as* Ita est, Res ita est, Fieri potest ut, *&c. as* Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, *and others do contend; tho' Mr.* Johnson *is of another Opinion.*]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats; as, *Ama*, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, *Amare*, to love.

III. The TENSES are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The SIMPLE *Tenses* are the *Present*, the *Preter-perfect* and *Future*.

1. The PRESENT	Tense speaks of Time now	Present.
2. The PRETER-PERFECT		Past.
3. The FUTURE		To come.

The COMPOUND Tenses are the *Preter-imperfect*, and the *Preter-pluperfect*.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was present and unfinished then; as, *Amabam*, I did love [*viz.* then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was past at or before that Time; as, *Scripseram epistolam*, I had written a Letter, [*i. e.* before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense called the FUTURE-PERFECT, or EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a Thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, *Cum cœnavero tu leges*, when I shall have supped, [*i. e. after Supper*] you shall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is *Shall have*; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two Things yet future shall be contemporary, or exist at one Time; as, *Cum cœnabo tu leges*, When I shall sup, [*i. e. in Time of Supper*] you shall read.

[*And not only the Tenses, but even the* MOODS *themselves may be divided into* SIMPLE *and* COMPOUND. *I call the* Indicative *a* simple Mood, *because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call* Compound, *because they have some other* Ideas *or* Modifications *of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb; such as,* a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, *&c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as,* a Command, *&c. in the* Imperative, *and according to* Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, *&c. in the Mood called* Potential; *or closely interwoven with it by the Help of a Conjunction, Adverb or other Verb expresst or understood: And because these also generally connote Time,*

they

Digitized by Google

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. *For, with respect to their* Execution, *they are generally future; but with respect to their* Modal Signification, *they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for Instance,* Lege, Rex *thou, with respect to its* Execution, *is future, but with respect to the* Command *it is present. Again in* Legam, *I may or can read, the* Action (*if done at all*) *must be future, but the* Liberty *or* Possibility *are present; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident, that from these* Modifications *of the Verb, more than from the bare* Execution *of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished; so I am of Opinion that had Grammarians taken their Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as* Sanctius, &c. *determining the Times of these Moods by the* Execution *only, have made the whole* Imperative *and* Subjunctive *of the Future Time, and the* Infinitive *and* Participles *of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others,* viz. Voſſius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. *tho' they will not go so far as* Sanctius, *yet upon the same Grounds make* Utinam legam *the Future of the Optative;* Utinam legerem *the Present of it. By the same Rule they make a Future of the* Potential *in* RIM; *as,* Citius crediderim, *I should or shall sooner believe; and another of the* Subjunctive *in* ISSEM; *as,* Juravit ſe illum ſtatim interfecturum, niſi jusjurandum ſibi dediſſet; *He swore he would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him,* Cic. *But, with all imaginable Deference to these great Men, I humbly think that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as* Compound, i. e *respecting one Time as to their* Execution, *and another as to the various* Modifications, *superadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples,* (*because they seem to have the greatest Difficulty*) citius crediderim *seems to import these two Things, 1ſt, That* I have and continue to have a Reason why I ſhould not believe it; *which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And 2dly, That* I ſhall ſooner have believed it, than another Thing, *with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples, where the* Preterite *in* RIM *hath the same Signification with the Future-perfect in* RO; *as,* Si te inde exemerim, *Terent. for* exemero. *See* Voſſ. lib. v. cap. 15. *and* Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. *As to the other Example, the Composition of two Times is yet more evident; for though* jusjurandum dediſſet *be posterior, and consequently future with respect to* Juravit, *yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to* interfecturum; *to prevent which it behoved it necessarily to be past; and so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the* Infinitive *and* Participles, *which of themselves have always one* fixed Time; *and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for Instance,* Scribere *is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it; and* Scripſiſſe *is always prior to the same Verb in all its Tenses; as* Dicit, dixit, *or* dicet; juvat, juvit *or* juvabit Me ſcribere *and* Me ſcripſiſſe. *So also the* Participles *have a* fixt Time, *present, past, or future; and when any Part of the Verb* Sum *is joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have these of that Verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiſcuouſly uſed: As I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the* Paſſive, *but* Active *Voice, both in the* Latin *and other Languages, if there were Place for it. Which yet, in my Judgment, does not hinder, but that every Part of a Verb hath formally, and of its own Nature, a certain Time* ſimple *or* compound, *to which it is fixed and determined.*]

Digitized by Google

IV. There

IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, anſwering to the ſame Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number; The FIRST ſpeaks of itſelf, the SECOND is ſpoken to, and the THIRD is ſpoken of. The *Firſt* hath only EGO and NOS, the *Second* only TU and VOS, and the *Third* any Subſtantive Noun ſingular and plural, put before the reſpective Terminations of the Verb, anſwering to them through all Voices, Moods and Tenſes.

[*A Verb hath the ſame Reſpect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Suſtantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Genders or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for theſe of its Subſtantive, ſo a Verb hath properly neither Perſons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations anſwering to the Perſons and Numbers of its Nominative.*]

NOTE, 1. That *Ego* and *Tu* are ſeldom expreſt, becauſe the Terminations of the Verb immediately diſcover them, without any Hazard of a Miſtake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Subſtantive Noun be joined with *Ego* or *Tu*, the Verb is of the Perſon of theſe Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Diſcourſe, the third Perſon is alſo frequently underſtood, becauſe eaſily known by what went before; and theſe Pronouns, *Ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is, idem, quis,* and *qui,* do often ſupply the Place of it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Preſent { Act. the Theme of the Verb, and *eſt, eth,* or *s*; or for the greater Emphaſis, *do, doſt, doth,* or *does* before it.
Paſſ. *am, art, is, are, be, beeſt,* with a Word in *ed, en, t,* &c.

Imper. { Act. *ed, edſt,* &c. or for the greater Emphaſis, *did, didſt,* before it.
Paſſ. *was, waſt, were, wert,* with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

Perfect { Act. *have, haſt, hath* or *has,* with a Word in *ed, en,* &c. or as the Im.
Paſſ. *have been, haſt been, hath* or *has been,* with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

Pluper. { Act. *had, hadſt,* with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.
Paſſ. *had been, hadſt been,* with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

Future { Act. *ſhall, will, ſhalt, wilt,* with the Verb.
Paſſ. *ſhall be, will be, ſhalt be, will be,* with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

The *Subjunctive* Mood active has frequently theſe Signs.

Preſent, *may* or *can.*
Imperf. *might, could, would, ſhould.*
Perfect, *might have, could have, would have, ſhould have,* or *had.*
Pluperf. *may have,* or *might have, could have, would have, ſhould have.*
Future, *ſhall have.*

The *Paſſive* has frequently the ſame Signs with *be* or *been.*

De Conjugationibus.

M. QUOT ſunt Conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia & Quarta.*

M. Quæ ſunt Notæ harum Conjugationum?

Of Conjugations.

M. HOW *many Conjugations are there?*

S. Four; Firſt, Second, Third *and* Fourth.

M. What are the Marks of theſe Conjugations?

D. Prima

Digitized by Google

D.				S.	
Prima	habet	A longum	ante RE Infinitivi.	*First*	*hath*	*A long*	*before RE of the Infinitive.*
Secunda		E longum		*Second*		*E long*	
Tertia		E breve		*Third*		*E short*	
Quarta		I longum		*Fourth*		*I long*	

The Common *Characteriſtick* of MARK by which theſe Conjugations are diſtinguiſhed from one another, is one of theſe three Vowels A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, tho' they alſo may be known by the ſame Vowels in ſeveral other Parts of them; for *A* long is moſt frequent in the Firſt, *E* long in the Second, *E* or *I* ſhort in the Third, and *I* long in the Fourth: Only *E* before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; and *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be obſerved that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them, (becauſe of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables, and conſtant Agreement in their laſt Vowel, and in the Terminations ariſing from it in all Conjugations) cannot properly be ſaid to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui*, *Docui*, *Elicui*, *Amicui*, or in *Fricum*, *Doctum*. *Elicitum*, *Amictum*, or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to diſtinguiſh their Conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio.

A M O.

Vox Activa.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præſ. Indic.	*Perfect.*	*Sup.*	*Præſ. Infin.*
Am-o,	am-avi,	am-atum,	am-are.

INDICATIVUS Modus.

Præſens.

Sing.	1	Am-o,
	2	Am-as,
	3	Am-at:
Plur.	1	Am-amus,
	2	Am-atis,
	3	Am-ant.

Imperfectum.

Sing.	1	Am-abam,
	2	Am-abas,
	3	Am-abat:
Plur.	1	Am-abamus,
	2	Am-abatis,
	3	Am-abant.

The firſt Conjugation.

To love.

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts.

Præſ. Indic.	*Perfect.*	*Sup.*	*Præſ. Infin.*
am-o,	am-avi,	am-atum,	am-are.

The INDICATIVE Mood.

The Preſent.

1	I *Love*, or *do love*,
2	*Thou loveſt*, or *doſt love*,
3	*He loveth*, or *doth love*:
1	*We love*, or *do love*,
2	*Ye* (or *you*) *love*, or *do love*,
3	*They love*, or *do love*.

The Imperfect.

1	*I loved*, or *did love*,
2	*Thou lovedſt*, or *didſt love*,
3	*He loved*, or *did love*:
1	*We loved*, or *did love*,
2	*Ye loved*, or *did love*,
3	*They loved*, or *did love*.

Per-

Digitized by Google

	Perfectum.	The Perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-avi,	1 *I have loved* *,
	2 Am-aviſti,	2 *Thou haſt loved,*
	3 Am-avit:	3 *He hath loved:*
Plur.	1 Am-avimus,	1 *We have loved,*
	2 Am-aviſtis,	2 *Ye have loved,*
	3 Am-averunt *vel* -avere.	3 *They have loved.*

	Pluſquamperfectum.	The Plu-perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-averam,	1 *I had loved,*
	2 Am-averas,	2 *Thou hadſt loved,*
	3 Am-averat:	3 *He had loved:*
Plur.	1 Am-averamus,	1 *We had loved,*
	2 Am-averatis,	2 *Ye had loved,*
	3 Am-averant.	3 *They had loved.*

	Futurum.	The Future.
Sing.	1 Am-abo,	1 *I ſhall* or *will love,*
	2 Am-abis,	2 *Thou ſhalt* or *wilt love,*
	3 Am-abit:	3 *He ſhall* or *will love:*
Plur.	1 Am-abimus,	1 *We ſhall* or *will love,*
	2 Am-abitis,	2 *Ye ſhall* or *will love,*
	3 Am-abunt.	3 *They ſhall* or *will love.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

	Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing.	1 Am-em,	1 *I may* or *can love,*
	2 Am-es,	2 *Thou mayſt* or *canſt love,*
	3 Am-et:	3 *He may* or *can love:*
Plur.	1 Am-emus,	1 *We may* or *can love,*
	2 Am-etis,	2 *Ye may* or *can love,*
	3 Am-ent.	3 *They may* or *can love.*

	Imperfectum.	The Imperfect.	
Sing.	1 Am-arem,	1 *I might, could, would* or *ſhould*	Imperf.
	2 Am-ares,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt,* &c.	
	3 Am-aret:	3 *He might, could, would* or *ſhould*	
Plur.	1 Am-aremus,	1 *We might, could, would* or *ſhould*	
	2 Am-aretis,	2 *Ye might, could, would* or *ſhould*	
	3 Am-arent.	3 *They might, could, would* or *ſhould*	

E Per-

* Or, *I loved* or *did love, Thou lovedſt* or *didſt love,* &c. as in the Imperfect.

Digitized by Google

	Perfectum.	The Perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-averim,	1 *I may have loved,*
	2 Am-averis,	2 *Thou mayſt have loved,*
	3 Am-averit:	3 *He may have loved:*
Plur.	1 Am-averimus,	1 *We may have loved,*
	2 Am-averitis,	2 *Ye may have loved,*
	3 Am-averint.	3 *They may have loved.*
	Pluſquam-perfectum.	The Plu-perfect.
Sing.	1 Am-aviſſem,	1 *I might, could, would, &c. have* or
	2 Am-aviſſes,	2 *Thou mightſt, couldſt, &c. have* or
	3 Am-aviſſet:	3 *He might, could, &c. have,* or
Plur.	1 Am-aviſſemus,	1 *We might, could, &c. have* or
	2 Am-aviſſetis,	2 *Ye might, could, &c. have* or
	3 Am-aviſſent.	3 *They might, could, &c. have* or
	Futurum.	The Future.
Sing.	1 Am-avero,	1 *I ſhall have loved,*
	2 Am-averis,	2 *Thou ſhalt have loved,*
	3 Am-averit:	3 *He ſhall have loved:*
Plur.	1 Am-averimus,	1 *We ſhall have loved,*
	2 Am-averitis,	2 *Ye ſhall have loved,*
	3 Am-averint.	3 *They ſhall have loved.*

IMPERATIVUS Modus.	The IMPERATIVE Mood.
Præſens.	The Preſent.
Sing. 2 Am-a *vel* am-ato,	2 *Love thou* or *do thou love,*
Sing. 3 Am-ato:	3 *Let him love:*
Plur. 2 Am-ate *vel* am-atote,	2 *Love ye* or *do ye love,*
Plur. 3 Am-anto.	3 *Let them love.*

INFINITIVUS Modus.	The INFINITIVE Mood.
Præſ. Am-are.	Preſ. *To love.*
Perf. Am-aviſſe.	Perf. *To have* or *had loved.*
Fut. Am-aturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	Fut. *To be about to love.*

PARTICIPIA.	The PARTICIPLES.
Præſ. Am-ans,	Of the Preſent, *Loving.*
Fut. Am-aturus, -a -um.	Of the Future, *About to love.*

GERUNDIA.	The GERUNDS.
Nom. Am-andum,	Nom. *Loving,*
Gen. Am-andi,	Gen. *Of loving,*

Dat.

Digitized by Google

Dat. Am-ando,	Dat. *To loving,*
Acc. Am-andum,	Acc. *Loving,*
Abl. Am-ando.	Abl. *From, in* or *by loving.*

SUPINA.	The SUPINES.
Prius, Am-atum.	First, *To love.*
Posterius, Am-atu.	Last, *To love* or *to be loved.*

VOX PASSIVA. *The Passive Voice.*

Amor, amatus, amari.

INDICATIVUS Modus. The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præsens. The Present.

Sing.	1 Am-or,	1 *I am loved,*	
	2 Am-aris *vel* -are,	2 *Thou art loved,*	
	3 Am-atur:	3 *He is loved:*	
Plur.	1 Am-amur,	1 *We are loved,*	
	2 Am-amini,	2 *Ye are loved,*	
	3 Am-antur.	3 *They are loved.*	

Imperfectum. The Imperfect.

Sing.	1 Am-abar,	1 *I was,*	loved.
	2 Am-abaris *vel* -abare,	2 *Thou wast* [*wert*]	
	3 Am-abatur:	3 *He was*	
Plur.	1 Am-abamur,	1 *We were*	
	2 Am-abamini,	2 *Ye were*	
	3 Am-abantur.	3 *They were*	

Perfectum. The Perfect.

Sing.	Ama-tus 1 sum *vel* fui,	1 *I have been*	loved.
	2 es *vel* fuisti,	2 *Thou hast been*	
	3 est *vel* fuit:	3 *He hath been*	
Plur.	Am-ati 1 sumus *vel* fuimus,	1 *We have been*	
	2 estis *vel* fuistis,	2 *Ye have been*	
	3 sunt fuerunt *v.* fuere.	3 *They have been*	

Pluſquamperfectum. The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	Am-atus 1 eram *vel* fueram,	1 *I had been*	loved.
	2 eras *vel* fueras,	2 *Thou hadst been*	
	3 erat *vel* fuerat:	3 *He had been*	
Plur.	Am-ati 1 eramus *v.* fueramus,	1 *We had been*	
	2 eratis *vel* fueratis,	2 *Ye had been*	
	3 erant *vel* fuerant.	3 *They had been*	

Futurum. The Future.

Sing.	1 Am-abor,	1 *I shall* or *will be*	loved.
	2 Am-aberis *vel* -abere,	2 *Thou shalt* or *wilt be*	
	3 Am-abitur:	3 *He shall* or *will be*	

Digitized by Google

Plur.	1 Am-abimus,	1 *We shall* or *will be*	loved.
	2 Am-abimini,	2 *Ye shall* or *will be*	
	3 Am-abuntur.	3 *They shall* or *will be*	

SUBJUNCTIVUS Modus. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præsens. The Present.

Sing.	1 Am-er,	1 *I may* or *can be*	loved.
	2 Am-eris *vel* -ere,	2 *Thou mayst* or *canst be*	
	3 Am-etur:	3 *He may* or *can be*	
Plur.	1 Am-emur,	1 *We may* or *can be*	
	2 Am-emini,	2 *Ye may* or *can be*	
	3 Am-entur.	3 *They may* or *can be*	

Imperfectum. The Imperfect.

Sing.	1 Am-arer,	1 *I might, could, would,* &c.	be loved.
	2 Am-areris *vel* -arere,	2 *Thou mightst, couldst,* &c.	
	3 Am-aretur:	3 *He might, could,* &c.	
Plur.	1 Am-aremur,	1 *We might, could,* &c.	
	2 Am-aremini,	2 *Ye might, could,* &c.	
	3 Am-arentur.	3 *They might, could,* &c.	

Perfectum. The Perfect.

Sing. Am-atus	1 sim *vel* fuerim,	1 *I may have been*	loved.
	2 sis *vel* fueris,	2 *Thou mayst have been*	
	3 sit *vel* fuerit:	3 *He may have been*	
Plur. Am-ati	1 simus *vel* fuerimus,	1 *We may have been*	
	2 sitis *vel* fueritis,	2 *Ye may have been*	
	3 sint *vel* fuerint.	3 *They may have been*	

Pluſquamperfectum. The Plu-perfect.

Sing. Am-atus	1 eſſem *vel* fuiſſem,	1 *I might, could,* &c. *have* or	had been loved.
	2 eſſes *vel* fuiſſes,	2 *Thou mightſt,* &c. *have* or	
	3 eſſet *vel* fuiſſet:	3 *He might,* &c. *have* or	
Plur. Am-ati	1 eſſemus *v.* fuiſſemus,	1 *We might,* &c. *have* or	
	2 eſſetis *v.* fuiſſetis,	2 *Ye might,* &c. *have* or	
	3 eſſent *vel* fuiſſent.	3 *They might,* &c. *have* or	

Futurum. The Future.

Sing. Ama-tus	1 fuero,	1 *I ſhall have been*	loved.
	2 fueris,	2 *Thou ſhalt have been*	
	3 fuerit:	3 *He ſhall have been*	
Plur. Am-ati	1 fuerimus,	1 *We ſhall have been*	
	2 fueritis,	2 *Ye ſhall have been*	
	3 fuerint.	3 *They ſhall have been*	

IMPERATIVUS Modus. The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Præsens. The Present.

Sing.	2 Am-are *vel* am-ator,	2 *Be thou loved,*	
	3 Am-ator:	3 *Let him be loved:*	

Digitized by Google

Plur.	2 Am-amini,	2 *Be ye loved,*
	3 Am-antor.	3 *Let them be loved.*
INFINITIVUS Modus.		The INFINITIVE Mood.
Præſ.	Am-ari.	*To be loved.*
Perf.	Am-atum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*To have* or *had been loved.*
Fut.	Am-atum iri.	*To be about to be loved.*
PARTICIPIA.		The PARTICIPLES.
Perfecti temporis,	Am-atus, -a -um.	Of the Perfect, *Loved.*
Futuri,	Am-andus, -a -um.	Of the Fut. *To be loved.*

Secunda Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing. 1	2	3	*Plur.* 1	2	3
Pr.	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.
Im.	Doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	Doc-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, -uere.
Plu.	Doc-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Doc-ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
Im.	Doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Per.	Doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu.	Doc-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut.	Doc-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ.	Doc- -e, -eto,	-eto;	-ete, -etote,	-ento.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Præſ. Doc-ere.	1 Doc-tum.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,
Perf. Doc-uiſſe.	2 Doc-tu.	*Fu.* Doc-turus.	Doc-endi,
Fut. Doc-turum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Doc-endo.

VOX

Digitized by Google

VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr. Doc-eor,	-eris, -ere,	-etur;	-emur,	-emini,	-entur.
Im. Doc-ebar,	-ebaris, -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
Fut. Doc-ebor,	-eberis, -ebere,	-ebitur;	-ebimur,	-ebimini,	-ebuntur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-ear,	-earis, -eare,	-eatur;	-eamur,	-eamini,	-eantur.
Im. Doc-erer,	-ereris, -erere,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. Doc-	-ere, -etor,	-etor;	-emini,	-entor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præf. Doc-eri.
Perf. Doc-tum esse *vel* fuisse.
Fut. Doc-tum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Per. Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um.

Tertia Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Præf.	Leg-o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
Imp.	Leg-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Leg-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt, -ere
Pluf.	Leg-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut.	Leg-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præf.	Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Imp.	Leg-erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erent.

Digitized by Google

Perf.

Perf. Leg-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plus. Leg-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet;	-iſſemus,	-iſſetis,	-iſſent.
Fut. Leg-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Leg- {-e, -ito; -ito; {-ite, -itote, -unto.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA*
Præſ. Leg-ere.	1 Lec-tum.	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Leg-endum,
Perf. Leg-iſſe.	2 Lec-tu.	*Fut.* Lec-turus.	Leg-endi,
Fut. Lec-turum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.			Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.		*Plur.*		
Pr. Leg-or,	{-eris, -ere,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-untur.
Im. Leg-ebar,	{-ebaris, -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
Fut. Leg-ar,	{-eris, -ere,	-etur;	-emur,	-emini,	-entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Leg-ar,	{-aris, -are,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
Im. Leg-erer,	{-ereris, -erere,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Leg- {-ere, -itor; -itor; -imini, -untor.

INFINITIVUS.	*PARTICIPIA.*
Præſ. Leg-i.	*Perf.* Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Lec-tum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.	*Fut.* Leg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lec-tum iri.	

Quarta

Digitized by Google

Quarta Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing. 1	2	3	Plur. 1	2	3
Pr.	Aud-io,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iebam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
Per.	Aud-ivi,	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	-iverunt, -ivere.
Pl.	Aud-iveram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
Fu.	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im.	Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret;	-iremus,	-iretis,	-irent.
Per.	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
Pl.	Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
Fu.	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr.	Aud- -i, -ito;		-ite, -itote,	-iunto.

INFINITIVUS.	SUPINA.	PARTICIPIA.	GERUNDIA.
Pr. Aud-ire.	1. Aud-itum.	Pr. Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum,
Per. Aud-ivisse.	2. Aud-itu.	Fu. Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi,
Fu. Aud-iturum esse *vel* fuisse.			Aud-iendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Audior, auditus, audiri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.	Plur.			
Pr.	Aud-ior, -iris, -ire,	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.
Im.	Aud-iebar, -iebaris, -iebare,	-iebatur;	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur.
Fu.	Aud-iar, -ieris, -iere,	-ietur;	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iar, -iaris, -iare,	-iatur;	-iamur,	-iamini,	-iantur.
Im.	Aud-irer, -ireris, -irere,	-iretur;	-iremur,	-iremini,	-irentur.

Digitized by Google

IM-

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Aud { -ire, -itor; -imini, -iuntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Aud-iri.
Perf. Aud-itum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Aud-itum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Per. Aud-itus, -a, -um.
Fut. Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

¶ Note, *That in the Examples of the* Second, Third *and* Fourth Conjugations, *we have omitted ſuch Parts of the* Paſſive Voice *as are ſupplied by the* Participle-perfect *with the Verb* Sum, viz. *the* Perfect *and* Plu-perfect *of the* Indicative, *and the* Perfect, Plu-perfect *and* Future *of the* Subjunctive, *as being the ſame in all* Conjugations *with the Example of the* Firſt, *the Change of the* Participle *only excepted*: *But it is carefully to be obſerved, that the* Participle *being an* Adjective, *muſt agree in* Gender, Number *and* Caſe *with its* Subſtantive, *or* (*which is the ſame thing*) *with the Perſon before it.*

1. REMARKS ſhewing when a LATIN *Verb* is to be rendered otherwiſe in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Examples.

WHEN the Continuation of a Thing is ſignified, the Engliſh Verb may be varied in all its Tenſes by the Participle in ING, with the Verb Am; as,

Preſ.	*I am reading,*	for	*I read.*
Imp.	*I was reading,*		*I did read,*
Perf.	*I have been reading,*		*I have read.*
Plup.	*I had been reading,*		*I had read.*
Fut.	*I ſhall be reading,*		*I ſhall read.*

So likewiſe in the *Paſſive* Voice, *The Houſe is building,* Domus ædificatur. *The Leſſon was preſcribing,* Lectio præſcribebatur. Sometimes *a* is ſet before the Participle; as, *While the Houſe is a building, It is a doing, he is a dying.*

2. When a Queſtion is asked, the Nominative Caſe or Perſon is ſet after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb; as, *Love I? Do I love? Can I love? Should he be loved?*

3. We have made THOU the ſecond Perſon ſingular to diſtinguiſh it from the Plural. But it is cuſtomary with us, (as alſo with the *French* and others) tho' we ſpeak but to one particular Perſon, to uſe the Plural YOU; and never THOU, but when we addreſs ourſelves to Almighty GOD, or otherwiſe when we ſignify Familiarity, Diſdain or Contempt,

4. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* is often engliſhed as the *Imperfect*; as *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem,* I never loved [or, did love] this Man.

See a Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib.* 1. from *v.* 21 to 39.

5. The PERFECT Tenſe is frequently engliſhed by HAD after *Antquam, Poſtquam, Ubi* or *Ut* for *Poſtquam*; as, *Poſtquam ſuperavimus Iſthmum.* After we had [were] paſt over the *Iſthmus, Ovid. Hæc ubi dicta dedi,* When he had ſpoken theſe Words, *Liv. Ut me ſalutavit, ſtatim Romam profectus eſt,* After he had ſaluted me, *&c.* Cic.

6. We have choſen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, *&c.* for the Engliſh of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, becauſe theſe are the moſt frequent Signs of it, and diſtinguiſh it beſt from other Moods; but very often it is the ſame with the *Indicative*, ſave only that it hath ſome *Conjunction* or *Indefinite* Word before it; ſuch as, *If Seeing, Leſt, That, Although, I wiſh,* &c. as, *Si amem,* If I love; *Ne amem,* Leſt I love; *Cauſa eſt cur amem,* It is the Cauſe why I love, *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames,* I intreat that you may love, *Idem.*

7. The PRESENT of the *Subjunctive* after *Quaſi, Tanquam,* and the like, is ſometimes engliſhed as the Imperfect; as, *Quaſi intelligant qualis ſit,* As if they underſtood what kind of Perſon he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Queſtion is asked, the *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive* is frequently engliſhed by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an ſileam?* Shall I ſpeak or be ſilent? *Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why ſhould I mention every Thing? *Ovid.* Likewiſe after *Non eſt quod*; as, *Non eſt* (ſupple *cauſa*) *quod eas,* There is no Reaſon why you ſhould go, *or* you need not go. Sometimes it is engliſhed by WOULD; as, *In facinus jurâſſe putes,* You would think they had ſworn to [commit] Wickedneſs, *Ovid.*

9. We have engliſhed the PERFECT of the *Subjunctive* in RIM by MAY HAVE, (as, *Ne fruſtra hi tales viri venerint,* That ſuch Men as theſe may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forſitan audieris,* You may perhaps have heard it:) to diſtinguiſh it from the *Preſent* and *Pluperfect*, by the Signs of which it is alſo moſt frequently engliſhed; as, *Ut ſic dixerim,* That I may ſo ſpeak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where ſhould I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas ſtrages ediderit?* Could one Man make ſo great a Slaughter? *Virg. Fortaſſe errarim,* Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritiſſimi,* The ableſt Orators I have ſeen [*or* could ſee] *Quintil.*

10. The *Perfect* in RIM ſometimes inclines very much to a future Signfication, and then it is engliſhed by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim,* I ſhould ſooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim,* I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicunque eorum facilè oppoſuerim,* I could eaſily match *Cicero* with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim,* I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluſerim alios,* And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego periclarim,* If you but trip in the leaſt, I ſhall be undone, *Ter.* but all thoſe Ways of ſpeaking, tho' indeed they reſpect the Future as to the Execution, yet they ſeem alſo to look a little beyond it, to a Time when their Futurity ſhall be paſt; and ſo come near in Signification to the Future in RO.

11. The *Perfect* of the *Subjunctive* after *Quaſi, Tanquam,* and the like may ſometimes be engliſhed by HAD; as, *Quaſi affuerim,* as if I had been preſent, *Plaut. Perinde ac ſi jam vicerint,* As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The PLU-PERFECT in ISSEM is ſometimes engliſhed by SHOULD as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperaviſſet, ſe eſſe facturos,* He might command what he pleaſed, whatever he commanded, [ſhould command] they would do, *Caſ. Fœdus ictum eſt his legibus, ut cujus populi cives eo certamine viciſſent, is alteri imperaret,* An Agreement was made on theſe

Terms,

Digitized by Google

Terms, that that People whose Countrymen should be victorious in that Combat, should have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is signified as future at a certain past Time referred to; and commonly takes Place, when what was formerly said directly is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcunque optaris*, Doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt choose shall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol Phaethonti factarum se esse dixit, quicquid optasset*, The Sun told Phaethon that he would do whatsoever he should choose, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, that what was the *Future* of the *Subjunctive* in the direct Speech, becomes the *Pluperfect* in the indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's* Exercises, *p.* 21, *&c.* But, as we have said, *p.* 30. the *Plu-perfect*, notwithstanding its coming in the Place of a *Future*, still retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a Thing now past at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero*, tho' it was future when first spoken by the *Sun*. And therefore there is no Reason for making this Termination in *issem* a Future Tense, as Mr. *Turner* does.

13. Tho' the proper English of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted as, *Qui Antonium oppressérit, is bellum confecerit*, He who shall cut off *Antony*, shall put an End to the War, *Cic. Haud destinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter. Si negaverit*, If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is englished by WILL; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis*, Somebody will perhaps say, *Cic. Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re juvero*, I will assist you either by comforting you, or with Counsel, or with Money, *Idem.* But tho' we thus render the *Future* in RO in our Language, and though (which is more material) very frequently it and the *Future* of the *Indicative* are used promiscuously, yet I cannot be persuaded that in any Instance the formal Significations of these are the same, as Mr. *Johnson* contends, *p.* 339. But still think with the great *Vossius*, that the *Future* in RO is always a *Future perfect*, that is, that there is a Time insinuated when a Thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a *Future* of the *Indicative* is joined with it, which in Order of Time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris, si disputabis*, You shall have done, [shall do] me a great Favour, if you shall dispute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finishing of an Action yet future, without formally considering the finishing of another Action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous Usage of Tenses one for another be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all Tenses, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. *Johnson* makes use of against *Sanctius* with respect to the Tenses of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *Could*, (which are sometimes Verbs themselves, and not the bare Signs of them:) also after *Must*, *Bid*, *Dare*, *Let*, *Help*, and *Make*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the *Infinitive* is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly englished as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being sometimes put before it, but oftner understood. And it is carefully to be remarked, that the same Tenses of the Infinitive are differently englished, according as the preceeding Verb varies its Tenses; as will appear in the following Scheme.

Dicit me scribere,	He says [that] I write.
Dixit me scribere,	He said [that] I was writing.
Dicet me scribere,	He shall say [that] I am writing.

Digitized by Google

Dicit me scripsisse, He says [that I wrote, or did write.
Dixit me scripsisse, He said [that] I had written.
Dicet me scripsisse, He shall say [that] I have written, or did write.
Dicit me scripturum [esse,] He says [that] I will write.
Dixit me scripturum [esse,] He said [that] I would write.
Dicet me scripturum [esse,] He shall say [that] I will write.
Dicit me scripturum fuisse, He says [that] I would have written.
Dixit me scripturum fuisse, He said [that] I would have written.
Dicet me scripturum fuisse, He shall say [that] I would have written.

It will be of great use to accustom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this Manner, both in *English* and *Latin*, especially after he has been taught something of Construction: And then to cause him vary the Accusative *Me* into *Te, se, illum, hominem, fœminam*, &c. and these again into the Plural, *Nos, vos, se, illos, homines, fœminas*, &c. But he must be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number, and Case.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Present* or *Future* Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* with *esse*, is rendered by SHALL or WILL; and when it is of the *Perfect* Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* is rendered by WOULD, as in the Examples above; and sometimes by SHOULD; as, *Dixi te sciturum esse*, I said that you should know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect* Tenses, the *English* of the *Infinitive* is the same as when it is of the *Perfect*.

16. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Passive*, made up with *Sum* or *Sim*, are englished by AM, ART, IS, ARE, instead of HAVE BEEN, when the Thing is signified to be just now past; as, *vulneratus sum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum est*, the Work is finished; *Cùm tempora mutata sint*, since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently englished by WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT, as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken; As is also what is called the *Plu-perfect* with *eram* and *essem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, The Labour was finished; *Si labor finitus esset*, If the Labour were finished.

II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1 A Great Part of the *Passive* Voice, and some of the *Active*, is made up of two of its own *Participles* and the Auxiliary Verb *Sum*, of which you have the full Conjugation, *p*, 52.) after this Manner:

The Participle Perfect with	*Sum* or *fui*	makes the	Perf.	Indicat.	Passive.
	eram or *fueram*		Plup.		
	sim or *fuerim*		Perf.	Subjunct.	
	essem or *fuissem*		Plup.		
	fuero		Fut.		
	esse or *fuisse*		Perf.	Infinit.	
The Participle Fut. Act. with	*esse* or *fuisse*		Fut.	Infinit.	Active.

2. Having *p.* 30. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its *Participles*, have a certain fixt Time simple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature signify, it will perhaps be here expected that I should account for that great Variety that is found in the

Digitized by Google

the *Passive* Voice. To put this Matter in the clearest Light I am able, I must premise another Division of the *Tenses*, *viz.* into PASSING and PAST; or into such as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the ending or finishing of it; and such as import that the Thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first sort are the *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future-imperfect*; of the second sort are the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future-perfect*, See Page 29. From this Division of the Tenses, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy Method of distinguishing all the Parts of the *Passive*. Thus for Instance, let the Subject of Discourse be the building of an House. 1. When I say, *Domus ædificatur*, I mean that it is just now a-building, but not finished. 2. When, *Ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past Time, a-building, but not then finished. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that some Time hence it shall be a-building, thout any formal Regard to the Finishing of it. But when I make use of the *Participle-perfect*, I always signify a Thing compleated and ended; but with these Subdistinctions. 1 *Ædificata est*; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any Regard to the Time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit*; it is finished, and some Time since has intervened. 3. *Ædificata erat*; it was finished at a certain past Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain Time past referred to, to which it was prior. 5, *Ædificata erit*; it shall be finished some Time hereafter, either without Regard to a particular Time when, or with respect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *Ædificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another Thing yet future, to which its finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then, how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, That this proceeds from one or more of these four Reasons. 1. Because it very frequently happens in Discourse that we have no Occasion particularly to consider these various Relations and Complications of Times; and 'tis the same Thing to our Purpose whether the Thing is or was done, or a-doing; or whether it was done just now, or some Time ago; or whether another Thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior to it; and the Matter being thus, we reckon ourselves at Liberty to take several Parts of the Verb at random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that in these Circumstances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state ourselves as present with, and as it were Eye-witnesses of the Things we relate, tho' really they were transacted long before, whence it is that we frequently use the Present instead of some past Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked that there are some Verbs, the Action whereof is in some Sense finished when begun; in which Case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the passing or past Tenses. And 4. The Present Tense (which strictly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and sometimes used for the Future, when we signify that the Execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the Action we take in also the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confined to will not allow us to illustrate these Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous Usage of the Tenses, in both Voices; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an Abuse of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard.

Digitized by Google

I shall only add for a Proof that these Tenses are not always to be used indifferently; that when we signify a Thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *fui* or *fuerim*, or *fuisse*, but *sum*, *sim*, and *esse*.

3. Whether the Learner should be obliged to get by Heart these Parts of the *Passive* that are supplied by *Sum*, or if they should be referred to Construction, (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Discretion of the Master, and therefore have put them in a smaller Character.

4. Besides these Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be resolved into its own Participles, and the Verb *Sum*, tho' their Significations are not precisely the same; as,

Amo,	*amabam*,	*amavi*,	*amaveram*,	*amabo*,
Sum amans,	*eram amans*,	*fui amans*,	*fueram amans*,	*ero amans*, or *fum amaturus.*
Amor,	*amabar*,	*amabor*,	*amer*,	*amarer.*
Sum amatus,	*eram amatus*,	*ero amatus*,	*amatus sim*,	*amatus essem.*

5. The Participle in RUS with the Verb SUM is frequently used instead of the *Future* of the *Indicative*, especially if *Purpose* or *Intention* is signified; as, *Profecturus sum*, or *Proficiscar*, I will go, *or* I am to go; and with *Sim* and *essem* instead of the *Future imperfect*, or *Plu-perfect* of the *Subjunctive*; as, *Non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubitavi quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *feciset*.

6. We have not joined ERO with FUERO for the *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, because we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different Moods: Tho' it must be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to the *Fut.* of the *Subjunctive* than that of the *Indicative*, as, *Ovid. Qui cum victus erit*, is much the same as *Victus fuerit*: And so these ancient Lawyers, *Scævola*, *Brutus* and *Manilius* understood the Words of the *Atinian* Law, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei æterna auctoritas esto.* But that a *Preterite* Time is there insinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit*, but to the Preterite-Participle with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See *Aulus Gellius*, *lib.* XVII. *cap.* 7.

7. We have omitted the Termination MINOR in the second Person Plural of the *Imperative*, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Standard (as the common *Rudiments* do) which is to be found only once or twice in *Plautus*, Epid. 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor*. And Pseud. 2. 2. *Pariter progrediminor*.

8. For the same Reason we have excluded the ancient Termination ASSO in the *Future Subjunctive* of the first Conjugation; as *Excantasso* in the Laws of the 12 Tables, *Levasso* in *Ennius*, *Abjurasso*, *Invitasso*, *Cænasso*, *Irritasso*, *Servasso*, &c. in *Plautus*; for *Excantavero*, *Levavero*, &c. to which may be added ESSO of the second Conjugation; as, *Licessit*, Idem; *prohibessit*, Cic. for *Licuerit*, *prohibuerit*; To these some add, *Jusso* for *jussero* in that of *Virg. Æn.* 11. *v.* 467.

Cætera, qua jusso, mecum manus inferat arma.

But tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Vossius* to think that it is only a *Syncope*; but not for the Reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other Examples in *sso* change *r* into *ss*; as, *Levaro*, *levasso*; but because I believe these old Futures were formed not from the common Futures in *ero*, as he supposes, but from the second Person sing. of the Present of the Indic. by adding *so*; as, *levas*, *levasso*; *prohibes*, *prohibesso*: According to which Rule *Jubeo* must have formed *jubesso*, not *jusso*.

9. Upon

9. Upon the same Account we have omitted the Future of the Infinitive in ASSERE formed from ASSO; as, *Impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere,* in *Plautus,* for *impetraturum esse,* &c.

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse* vel *fuisse,* &c. in the *Nominative,* as, *Dicitur amaturus esse,* yet we have contented ourselves with the Accusative *amaturum* and *amatum,* as most common, reserving the Distinction between these to Construction. [See Page 77.]

11. The *Future* of the *Infinitive Passive* is made up of the *First Supine* and IRI the Infinitive Passive of EO: And therefore it is not varied in Numbers and Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *Sum.*

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as some teach; for such Phrases as these, *Amatum ire. Doctum ire,* are rather of the Present than Future Tense.

13. The Participle in DUS with *esse* and *fuisse,* is not properly the Future of the Infinitive Passive, as is commonly believed: For it does not so much import *Futurity,* as *Necessity, Duty* or *Merit.* For there is a great Difference between these two Sentences, *Dicit literas à se scriptum iri,* and *Dicit literas à se scribendas esse;* the first signifying, *That a Letter will be written by him,* or *That he will write a Letter;* and the second, *That a Letter must be written by him,* or, *He is obliged to write a Letter.* For tho' *Sanctius* and *Messieurs de Port Royal* contend that this Participle is sometimes used for simple Futurity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnson* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the *Imperative* Mood wants the first Person both Singular and Plural, because no Man can or needs command or exhort himself: Or, if he does, he must justle himself out of the first into the second Person, as in that of *Catullus* speaking to himself, *At tu Catulle, destinatus obdura.* But you *Catullus,* continue obstinate.

15. The *Present* of the *Subjunctive* is most frequently used instead of the *Imperative,* especially in forbidding, after, *Ne, nemo, nullus,* &c. as, *Valeas,* Farewell, for *vale. Ne facias,* Do it not, rather than *Ne fac.* And sometimes the *Future* of the *Subjunctive;* as, *Tu videris,* See you to it. *Ne dixeris,* Don't say it. And sometimes also the *Future* of the *Indicative;* as *Non occides,* Thou shalt not kill, for *Ne occide,* or *occidito. Sed valebis, meaque negotia videbis,* Cic. i. e. *Sed vale, meaque negotia vide. Referes ergo hæc & nuncius ibis Pelidæ genitori,* Virg. i. e. *refer & ito.* But it is to be remarked that none of these are proper *Imperatives;* for to the first is understood, *oro, rogo, peto,* or the like with *ut;* as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *ne* expreſt; and the third is only a Command by Consequence; because of the Authority, Influence, or Power of the Speaker. For which Reason, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one another, we have excluded these from the *Imperative:* Tho' the common *Rudiments* take in the first, and *Alvarus* the second and third. However it is observable that we shew most Civility and Respect when we use the *Subjunctive,* and most Authority by the *Future* of the *Indicative,* and NTO of the *Imperative;* which last is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are delivered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the second Person *Passive* is more usual than RE; and URUNT of the *Perfect* of the *Indicative Active* than ERE; especially in prose, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. Re-

Digitized by Google

III. REMARKS *upon* ENGLISH Verbs.

1. AN *Engliſh Verb* hath only two *Tenſes*, diſtinguiſhed by different *Terminations*, and both in the *Active Voice*, *viz.* the *Preſent* and *Preterite*. The *Preſent* is the Verb itſelf, and the *Preterite* is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill, filled*; *Love, loved*.

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Paſſive*, is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs *Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can*, and *Am*; as in Page 31. and in the Example, *To love*, Page 32. *&c.*

3. An Engliſh Verb hath different Terminations for the *Perſons* of the ſingular Number. The *Preſent* hath three or four. The firſt Perſon is the Verb itſelf; the ſecond ends in *eſt* or *ſt*; the third in *eth, es* or *s*. The *Preterite* hath only two; the firſt commonly ending in *ed*, and the ſecond in *eſt* or *ſt*: But the third Perſon ſingular of the *Preterite*, and all the Perſons plural, both of it and the *Preſent*, cannot otherwiſe be diſtinguiſhed than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two *Participles*, the *Preſent* ending always in *ing*, and the *Preterite* ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many *Irregular Engliſh* Verbs; but it is to be noted, 1, That that *Irregularity* relates only to the Termination of the *Preterite* Tenſe, and the *Paſſive Participle*. 2. That it reaches only ſuch Words as are native and originally *Engliſh*. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the *Preterite* is regular the *Paſſive Participle* is the ſame with it. Except *Hewed, Mowed, Shewed, Snowed, Sowed*; which have *Hewn, Mown, Shown, Snown, Sown*.

6. Theſe *Irregularities* may be reduced to the following Heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c, ch, ſh, f, k, p, x*; and after *s* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and ſometimes after *l m, n, r*, when a ſhort Vowel goes before it; as, *Plac't, Snatch't, Fiſh't, Walk't, Dwelt, Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either ſhortned, or changed into a ſhort one; as *Kept, Slept, Wept, Crept, Swept, Leapt*, from *keep, ſleep, weep, creep, ſweep, leap*; as alſo ſometimes before *l, m, n, r*, and *v* turned into *f*; as *feel, felt*; *Dream, dreamt*; *Mean, meant*; *Leave, left*.

(2) When the *Preſent* ends in *d* or *t*, the *Preterite* is ſometimes the ſame with it; as, *Read, Caſt, Hurt, Burſt, Hit, Quit*; and when two Vowels precede, the laſt is left out; as, *Spread, ſpred*; *Lead, led*; *Feed, fed*; *Bleed, bled*; *Meet, met*. When a Conſonant comes before *d*, it is ſometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend, bent*; *Lend, lent*; *Send, ſent*; *Rend, rent*; *Gird, girt*.

(3.) Moſt of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Liſts.

I. *Such as have their Preterite and Participle Paſſive the ſame.*

Awake	awoke.	Find,	found.	Pay,	paid.	Sting,	ſtung.
Abide,	abode.	Flee,	fled.	Say,	ſaid.	Swing,	ſwung.
Beſeech,	beſought.	Fling.	flung.	Seek,	ſought.	Swim,	Swum.
Bind,	bound.	Grind,	ground.	Sell,	ſold.	Teach,	taught.
Bring,	brought.	Gild,	gilt.	Sit,	ſat.	Tell,	told.
Buy,	bought.	Hang,	hung.	Shine,	ſhone.	Think,	thought.
Catch,	caught.	Hear,	heard.	Spin,	ſpun.	Work,	wrought
Dig,	dug.	Lay,	laid.	Spring,	ſprung.	Win,	won.
Drink,	drunk.	Loſe,	loſt.	Stand,	ſtood.	Wind,	wound.
Fight,	fought.	Make,	made.	Stick,	ſtuck.	Wring,	wrung.

Digitized by Google

II. *Such*

II. *Such as have the Preterite and Participle different*; as,

Bear,	bore,	born.	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Shrink,	shrank,	shrunk.
Begin,	began,	begun.	Get,	got,	gotten.	Sink,	sank,	sunk.
Bid,	bad,	bidden.	Give,	gave,	given.	Slay,	slew,	slain.
Beat,	beat,	beaten.	Go,	went,	gone.	Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Grow,	grew,	grown.	Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Hew,	hewed,	hewen.	Strike,	struck,	stricken.
Chide,	chid,	chidden.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Speak,	spoke,	spoken.
Choose,	chose,	chosen.	Hold,	held,	holden.	Spit,	spat,	spitten.
Cleave,	clove,	cleft.	Know,	knew,	known.	Strive,	strove,	striven.
Come,	came,	come.	Ly,	lay,	lay'n.	Swear,	swore,	sworn.
Crow,	crew,	crow'd.	Ride,	rode,	ridden.	Swell,	swell'd,	swoln.
Dare,	durst,	dared.	Ring,	rang,	rung.	Take,	took,	taken.
Do,	did,	done.	Rise,	rose,	risen.	Tear,	tore,	torn.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Run,	ran,	run.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Drive,	drove,	driven.	See,	saw,	seen.	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Eat,	eat,	eaten.	Seeth,	sod,	sodden.	Tread,	trode,	trodden.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Shake,	shook,	shaken.	Wear,	wore,	worn.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Weave,	wove,	woven.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.	Shoot,	shot,	shotten.	Write,	wrote,	written.

These Preterites, *Bare*, *Share*, *Sware*, *Tare*, *Ware*, *Clave*, *Gat*, *Begat*, *Forgat*, *Brake*, *Spake*, *Slang*, *Sprang*, *Swang*, *Wan*, *Stank*, *Sank*, are seldom used. But, *Beseech'd*, *Catch't*, *Work'd*, *Digged*, *Gilded*, *Girded*, *Hang'd*, *Swam*, *Writ*, for *Besought*, *Caught*, &c. are frequently to be met with.

NOTE, 1. That when the Verb ends in one *Consonant*, that *Consonant* is for the most Part doubled before *ing*, *ed*, *est*, *edst* and *eth*, as, *Worship*, *worshipping*, *worshipped*, *worshippest*, *worshippedst*, *worshippeth*: As also before *en*; as, *Bid*, *bidden*.

NOTE, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common in *English* Verbs; as, *Lov'd*, *lov'st*, for *loved*, *lovest*,) begins now to be disused by the most polite Writers in Prose: but Poets still use it, tho' not so much as formerly.

NOTE, 3. That the *Preterite Active* and the *Participle Passive* (when one Word serves for both) are thus distinguished: When it hath nothing before it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the *Preterite Active*; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb AM, it is the *Participle Passive*.

EXCEPT *Come*, *Gone*, *Run*, *Set*, *Risen*, *Fallen*, *Grown*, *Withered*; and such like Intransitive Verbs, which have frequently the *Passive Signs* AM, ART, *&c.* instead of HAVE in the *Perfect* Tense; and WAS, WAST, *&c.* instead of HAD in the *Pluperfect*; as, *Veni*, I am come; *Veneram*, I was come.

NOTE, 4. That tho' the Latin *Perfect* frequently answers both to HAVE and DID, (or the Preterite Termination ED, *&c.*) yet they seem to be thus distinguished. DID or ED, *&c.* respects a certain past Time, in which the thing was finished, or a-finishing; as, *I wrote*, or *did write yesterday*: HAVE either speaks of a Thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular Time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter*, i.e. just now; *I have read of* Julius Cæsar, *i. e.* some time or other. The first of these is called the *Preterperfect Definite*, and the other the *Preterperfect Indefinite*.

NOTE, 4. That SHALL and WILL by Mr. *Brightland* are thus distinguished;

Digitized by Google

In the First Person simply SHALL foretells;
In WILL a Threat, or else a Promise dwells.
SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat;
WILL simply then foretells the future Feat.
By Mr. *Turner* thus,

WILL imports the *Will* or *Purpose* of the Person it is joined wit: SHALL implies the *Will* of another, who *promises* or *threatens* to do th Thing, or cause it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum.

QUatuor sunt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur; *sciz. o* Præsentis, *i* Præteriti, *um* Supini, & *re* Infinitivi, hoc modo;

1. Ab *o* formantur *am* & *em.*

2. Ab *i* formantur *ram, rim, ro, ssem, sse.*

3. Ab *um* formantur *u, us,* & *rus.*

4. A *re* formantur reliquæ omnes; nempe *bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.*

Of the Formation of Verbs.

THere are four Termination of a Verb, from which al the rest are formed; namely, o of the Present, i of the Preterite um of the Supine, and re of th Infinitive, after this Manner;

1. From o are formed am and em.

2. From i, ram, rim, ro, ssem and sse.

3. U, us and rus are formed from um.

4. All other Parts from re do come; as bam, bo, rem, a, e, and i, ns, and dus, dum, do and di.

In every complete *Verb* there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, *viz.* the *Present* of the *Indicative* in O, the *Preterite* or *Perfect* in I, the first *Supine* in UM, and the *Present* of the *Infinitive* in RE. The first (which is therefore called the THEME or Root of the *Verb*) gives *Origin* to the whole Verb, either *mediately* or *immediately*. The *Preterite*, the *first Supine*, and the *Present* of the *Infinitive* come from it *immediately*, and all the rest from them; except the *Future* of the *Indicative* in *am*, and the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* in *em* or *am*, which by this Scheme are also formed *immediately* from the *Present* in O.

It is to be noted, that the *Preterites* and *Supines* of the *First Conjugation* end commonly in *avi* and *atum*, of the *Second* in *ui* and *itum*, and of the *Fourth* in *ivi* and *itum*. But the *Third Conjugation* cannot be reduced to any general Rule, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, 'till the Scholar is advanced to that Part of *Grammar* that treats particularly of them.

But the *Present* of the *Infinitive*, and all the other Parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform Manner.

In the foregoing Rules of *Formation*, I have for the Ease of the Memory, put the *Terminations* instead of the *Moods* and *Tenses*; but for the greater Plainness they may be thus expressed.

Digitized by Google

I. From the *Present* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Future* of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth Conjugations* in *am*, and the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* of the *First* in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the *Perfect* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Pluperfect* of it, the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect* and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, and the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive*.

III. From the *First Supine* is formed the *Last Supine*, the *Participle Perfect* and *Future Active*.

IV. From the *Present* of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfect* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the same when it ends in BO, (*viz.* in the first and second *Conjugations*,) the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Present* and *Future Passive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in IO of the *Third Conjugation* retain *i* before *unt*, *unto*, *ebam*, *am*, *eus*, *endus*, *endum*; but lose it in the *Present* of the *Infinitive* and *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 2. That the *last Person Plur.* of the Imperative may be formed by adding *o* to the same *Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*; as, *Amant*, *amanto*; *docent*, *docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Passive Voice* is formed from the same *Tenses* of the *Active*, (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Passive* of the *Third Conjugation* may be formed by taking *s* from the *Second Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative Active*; as, *legis*, *legi*; or when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as *Proficiscor*, *proficisci*; *morior*, *mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Active*, and the *Second Person* of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Passive* in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the *Second Person Plural* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*, and of the *Imperative*, are the same in the *Passive* Voice.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principal Parts* are wanting, these Parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which Reason Grammarians give *Supines* to a great many Verbs which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the Participles formed from them are found; and they suppose likewise all *Deponent* Verbs of old have had the *Active* Voice, and consequently *Supines*, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second Conjugation* end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the *Fourth* in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are Eight Verbs in *eo* of the *First Conjugation*, viz. *beo*, *creo*, *screo*, *meo*, *calceo*, *laqueo*, *nauseo*, *nucleo*. There are Twenty four in *io* of the *First*, viz. *amplio*, *basio*, *brevio*, *concilio*, *crucio*, *furio*, *glacio*, *hio*, *lanio*, *luxurio*, *macio*, *nuncio*, *pio*, *propitio*, *radio*, *repudio*, *satio*, *saucio*, *socio*, *somnio*, *spolio*, *suavio*, or rather *suavior*, *vario*, *vitio*; with some other less common; as, *decurio*, *succenturio*, *fascio*, *retalio*, *strio*, *tertio*, &c. and Twelve of the *Third*, viz. *capio*, *facio*, *jacio*, *lacio*, *specio*, *fodio*, *fugio*, *cupio*, *rapio*, *sapio*, *pario*, *quatio*, with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the *Body*, or *Essential Part* of the *Verb* by a *Division* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the *Essential Part* of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *eo*, or *io*, of the *Present* of the *Indicative*) to substitute the *Essential Part* of

the other, and then to add to it the additional Syllables it receives in Conjugation as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the usual Syllables to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in *Note* 1.

There is yet another Way of the Formation of Verbs, differing only from the First Method in this, that what Parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the First or Second Person of the Present of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more natural Way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De Verbis Irregularibus.

IRREGULARIA Verba vulgò recensentur octo, *viz. Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero, & Fio,* cum Compositis.

Of Irregular Verbs.

THE *IRREGULAR Verbs* are commonly reckoned *Eight*, viz. Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero *and* Fio, *with their Compounds.*

SUM,

Sum, fui, esse, *To be.*

INDICATIVUS.		*SUBJUNCTIVUS.*	
		Præsens.	
Sum,	*I am,*	Sim,	*I may* or *can be,*
Es,	*Thou art,*	Sis,	*Thou mayst* or *canst be,*
Est:	*He is:*	Sit;	*He may* or *can be:*
Sumus,	*We are,*	Simus,	*We may* or *can be,*
Estis,	*Ye are,*	Sitis,	*Ye may* or *can be,*
Sunt.	*They are.*	Sint.	*They may* or *can be.*
		Imperfectum.	
Eram,	*I was,*	Essem,	*I might,* &c. *be,*
Eras,	*Thou wast,*	Esses,	*Thou mightest be,*
Erat,	*He was:*	Esset:	*He might be:*
Eramus:	*We were,*	Essemus,	*We might be,*
Eratis,	*Ye were,*	Essetis,	*Ye might be,*
Erant.	*They were.*	Essent.	*They might be.*
		Perfectum.	
Fui,	*I have been,*	Fuerim,	*I may have been,*
Fuisti,	*Thou hast been,*	Fueris,	*Thou mayst have been,*
Fuit:	*He hath been:*	Fuerit;	*He may have been:*
Fuimus,	*We have been,*	Fuerimus,	*We may have been,*
Fuistis,	*Ye have been,*	Fueritis,	*Ye may have been,*
Fuerunt, -ere.	*They have been,*	Fuerint,	*They may have been.*

Digitized by Google

Plusf.

Plusquam-perfectum.

Fueram,	*I had been,*	Fuissem,	*I might,* &c. *have*	*or had been.*
Fueras,	*Thou hadst been,*	Fuisses,	*Thou mightest have*	
Fuerat:	*He had been:*	Fuisset:	*He might have*	
Fueramus,	*We had been,*	Fuissemus,	*We might have*	
Fueratis,	*Ye had been,*	Fuissetis,	*Ye might have*	
Fuerant.	*They had been.*	Fuissent.	*They might have*	

Futurum.

Ero,	*I shall* or *will be,*	Fuero,	*I shall have been,*
Eris,	*Thou shalt* or *wilt be,*	Fueris,	*Thou shalt have been,*
Erit:	*He shall* or *will be:*	Fuerit:	*He shall have been:*
Erimus,	*We shall* or *will be,*	Fuerimus,	*We shall have been,*
Eritis,	*Ye shall* or *will be,*	Fueritis,	*Ye shall have been,*
Erunt.	*They shall* or *will be.*	Fuerint.	*They shall have been.*

IMPERATIVUS.

Præsens.	Es *vel* Esto,	*Be thou.*
	Esto:	*Let him be.*
	Este *vel* Estote,	*Be ye.*
	Sunto.	*Let them be.*

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Esse, *To be.*
Perf. Fuisse, *To have been.*
Fut. Futurum esse *vel* fuisse. *To be about to be.*

PARTICIPIUM.

Fut. Futurus. *About to be.*

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adsum, absum, desum, intersum, præsum, obsum, subsum, supersum, insum, prosum* & *possum.* The first eight are conjugated as the simple SUM: *Insum* wants the Preterite and its Descendents; for we do not use *Infui, infuisti, infueram,* &c.

¶ PROSUM, *To do good,* has a *d* where SUM begins with *e*; as,

IND. *Pr.* Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est: pro-sumus, prod-estis, pro-sunt.
Im. Prod-eram, prod-eras; prod-erat: prod-eramus, &c.
SUB. *Im.* Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset: prod-essemus, &c.
IMPERAT. Prod-esto, prod-este. INFINIT. *Præs.* Prod-esse.

POSSUM should be *pot-sum,* (as being compounded of *potis,* able, and *Sum*) but for the better Sound *t* is changed into *s* before another, and retained before any other Letter: And for the same Reason *s* is always taken away. *Possem* and *Posse* are contracted for *Potessem, potesse,* which yet are to be found in some old Authors; thus,

¶ Possum, potui, posse, *To be able.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr.	Possum,	potes,	potest:	possumus, potestis, possunt.
Im.	Poteram,	poteras,	poterat:	poteramus, poteratis, poterant.
Per.	Potui,	potuisti,	potuit:	potuimus, potuistis, potuerunt *v.* -uere.
Pl.	Potueram,	potueras,	potuerat:	potueramus, potueratis, potuerant.
Fu.	Potero,	poteris,	poterit:	poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.

SUB.

Digitized by Google

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Possim,	possis,	possit:	possimus,	possitis,	possint.
Imp. Possem,	posses,	posset:	possemus,	possetis,	possent.
Perf. Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.
Plus. Potuissem,	potuisses,	potuisset:	potuissemus,	potuissetis,	potuisset.
Fut. Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit:	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Posse. *Perf.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs.	Eo,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
Imp.	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Perf.	Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivimus,	ivistis,	iverunt, ivere.
Plus.	Iveram,	iveras,	iverat;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut.	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
Im.	Irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
Per.	Iverim,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Plu.	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
Fut.	Ivero,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. { i, / ito, } ito; { ite, / itote, } eunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Ire,
Perf. Ivisse,
Fut. Iturum esse *vel* fuisse.

PARTICIPIA.

Præs. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.
Fu. Iturus, -a, -um.

SUPINA.

1. Itum.
2. Itu.

GERUNDIA.

Eundum.
Eundi.
Eundo.

NOTE, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the fourth Conjugation.

NOTE, 2. That of old Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *ibam*, and Future in *ibo*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.

After the same Manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, *viz.* *Adeo, abeo, exeo, obeo, redeo, subeo, pereo, coëo, ineo, praeo, anteeo, prodeo, praetereo, transeo*; *Adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adeundum*, &c. But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Digitized by Google

NOTE,

NOTE, That in the Compounds *ivi, iviſti, &c.* are ſeldom uſed, but they are contracted into *ii, iſti*; as, *adii, adiiſti*, and ſometimes *adiſti*: So *adieram, adierim*, &c.

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the ſame Way as *EO*; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Participles* are ſcarcely in uſe.

V O L O.

Volo, volui, velle, *To will*, or *be willing*.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Vol-o,	vis,	vult;	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
Imp.	Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Vol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, -uere.
Pluſ.	Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Vol-am,	voles,	volet;	volemus,	voletis,	volent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Vel-im,	velis,	velit;	velimus,	velitis,	velint.
Imp.	Vel-lem,	velles,	vellet;	vellemus,	velletis,	vellent.
Perf.	Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Pluſ.	Vol-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut.	Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

INFINITIVUS. *PARTICIPIUM.*

Præſ. Velle. *Perf.* Voluiſſe. *Præſ.* Volens.

The reſt are wanting.

N O L O.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling*.

INDICATIVUS.

Pr.	Nolo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolumus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Im.	Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per.	Nol-ui	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	uerunt, uere.
Plu.	Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	uerant.
Fut.	Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	nolemus,	noletis,	nolent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
Imp.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.

Digitized by Google

Perf.

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluf. Nol-uiſſem, -uiſſes, -uiſſet; -uiſſemus, -uiſſetis, -uiſſent.
Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS. *INFINITIVUS.* *PARTICIPIUM.*

Præſ. Noli, nolite, | *Pr.* Nolle. *Præſ.* Nolens.
Nolito; nolitote. | *Per.* Noluiſſe. *The reſt wanting.*

M A L O.

Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malunt.
Imp. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Mal-ui, -uiſti, -uit; -uimus, -uiſtis, -uerunt, -uere.
Pluf. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et, *&c.* *This is ſcarcely in Uſe.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint.
Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Perf. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluf. Mal-uiſſem, -uiſſes, -uiſſet; -uiſſemus, -uiſſetis, -uiſſent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Malle. *Perf.* Maluiſſe.

NOTE, That *Volo*, *Nolo* and *Malo*, retain ſomething of the Third Conjugation, for *Vis*, *vult*, *vultis* are contracted of *Volis*, *volit*, *volitis*; and *o* is changed into *u*, for of old they ſaid *Volt*, *voltis*.

Nolo is compounded of *Non volo*, and *Malo* of *magis volo*.

F E R O.

VOX ACTIVA.

Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring* or *ſuffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat; ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.
Per. Tuli, tuliſti, tulit; tulimus, tuliſtis, tulerunt, -ere.
Pluf. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

Digitized by Google

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Feram,	feras,	ferat;	feramus,	feratis,	ferant.
Imp.	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferremus,	ferretis,	ferrent.
Per.	Tul-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Pluſ.	Tul-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet;	-iſſemus,	-iſſetis,	-iſſent.
Fut.	Tul-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Fer, / Ferto, ferto; ferte, / fertote, ferunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tuliſſe.
Fut. Laturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.

PARTICIPIA.

Præſ. Ferens.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.

SUPINA.

1. Latum.
2. Latu.

GERUNDIA.

Ferendum,
Ferendi,
Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror, latus, ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ. Feror, ferris, / ferre, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.

Imp. Fer-ebar, -ebaris, / -ebare, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.

Perf. Latus ſum *vel* fui, latus es *vel* fuiſti, *&c.*

Pluſ. Latus eram *vel* fueram, latus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*

Fut. Ferar, ferereris, / ferere, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ. Ferar, feraris, / ferare, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.

Imp. Ferrer, ferreris, / ferrere, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.

Perf. Latus ſim *vel* fuerim, latus ſis *vel* fueris, *&c.*

Pluſ. Latus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, latus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, *&c.*

Fut. Latus fuero, latus fueris, *&c.*

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. Ferre, / Fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

INFINITIVUS.

Præſ. Ferri.
Perf. Latum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Latum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Perf. Latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Fe[illegible] a, -um.

Digitized by Google

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, ferto. ferte. ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor* being contracted of *Feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur* and *feritor*.

Alſo *Fer* is contracted of *fere*; which in like Manner has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, inſtead of *dice, duce, face*.

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the ſame Way as the Simple; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum*; *Auferо, abſtuli, ablatum*; *Differo, diſtuli, dilatum*; *Confero, contuli, collatum*; *Infero*; *intuli, illatum*; *Offero, obtuli, oblatum*; *Effero, extuli, elatum*; So *Circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, præfero*.

F I O.

Fio, factus, fieri, *To be made*, or *to become*.

INDICATIVUS.

Præſ.	Fio,	fis,	fit;	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Imp.	Fiebam,	fiebas,	fiebat;	fiebamus,	fiebatis,	fiebant.
Perf.	Factus ſum *vel* fui, factus es *vel* fuiſti, *&c.*					
Pluſ.	Factus eram *vel* fueram, factus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*					
Fut.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiemus,	fietis,	fient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præſ.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiamus,	fiatis,	fiant.
Imp.	Fierem,	fieres,	fieret;	fieremus,	fieretis,	fierent.
Perf.	Factus ſim *vel* fuerim, factus ſis *vel* fueris, *&c.*					
Pluſ.	Factus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, factus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, *&c.*					
Fut.	Factus fuero, factus fueris, *&c.*					

IMPERATIVUS.

Præſ. { Fi *, Fito, } fito; { fite, fitote, } fiunto.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Fieri.
Per. Factum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.
Fut. Factum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Per.	Factus,	-a,	-um.
Fut.	Faciendus,	-a,	-um.

SUPINUM.

Factu.

* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by ſome Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it Place here, not only becauſe it is to be found in *Plautus*, but alſo in *Horace, Lib.* 2. *Sat* 5. *ver.* 38. *Fi cognitor ipſe*, according to the beſt MSS. and Editions.

NOTE, 1.

Digitized by Google

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Paſſive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) inſtead of *Facior*, which is not in uſe: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i*, are regular; as, *afficior, affectus, affici; perficior, perfectus, perfici.*

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperat. Act. *fac*, and their Paſſive Form (when uſed) *fio*; as, *Calefacio, lucrifacio, benefacio; calefac, calefio*, &c. But theſe compounded with a Preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fice* and *ficior*. There are ſome compounded of *Facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the Firſt Conjugation; as, *magnifico, ſignifico.*

To the *Irregular* Verbs may be reduced EDO, *to eat*, which in ſome of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*; thus,

IND. *Præſ.* Edo, es, eſt; - - - eſtis, - - -
SUB. *Imp.* Eſſem, eſſes, eſſet; eſſemus, eſſetis, eſſent.
IMP. Es *vel* eſto, - - - eſte *vel* eſtote. INFIN. Eſſe.

Likewiſe its Compounds, *Comedo, comes, comeſt*, &c. and *Exedo, exes, exeſt*, &c. But all theſe may likewiſe be regularly conjugated, *Edo, edis, edit*, &c. *Ederem, ederes, ederet*, &c.

Of Defective Verbs.

THO' ſome of the *Irregular* Verbs already mentioned want ſome of their Parts, and upon that Account may be called alſo *Defective* Verbs, yet by DEFECTIVE *Verbs* here we chiefly underſtand ſuch as want conſiderable Branches, or are uſed only in few *Tenſes* and *Perſons*. We ſhall ſet down theſe that moſt frequently occur. I. AIO, *I ſay*; INQUAM, *I ſay*; FOREM, *I ſhould be*; AUSIM, *I dare*; FAXIM, *I'll ſee to it*, or *I will do it*; AVE and SALVE, *God ſave you, Hail, Good-morrow*; CEDO, *tell*, or *give me*; QUÆSO, *I pray.*

IND. *Præſ.* Aio, ais, ait; - - - - - - aiunt.
Imp. Ai-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. - - - aiſti, - - - - - - - - -
SUB. *Præſ.* - - - aias, aiat; - - - aiatis, aiant.
IMPERAT. ai. [PARTICIP. *Præſ.* aiens.]

INDIC. *Præſ.* Inquam, inquis, inquit; inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.
Imp. - - - - - inquiebat; - - - - - - inquiebant.
Perf. - - - inquiſti, - - - - - - - -
Fut. - - - inquies, inquiet; - - - - - - -
IMPERAT. inque, -ito. PARTICIP. *Præſ.* inquiens.

SUB. *Imp.* *Pluſ.* Forem, fores, foret; foremus, foretis, forent.
INF. Fore, *to be*, or *to be about to be*, the ſame with *futurum eſſe*.

SUB. *Præſ.* Auſim, auſis, auſit; - - - -
Perf. Faxim, faxis, faxit; - - - faxint.
Fut. Faxo, faxis, faxit; ——— faxitis, faxint.

NOTE, That *faxim* and *faxo* are uſed inſtead of *fecerim* and *fecero.*

IMPERAT. Ave, Aveto, Salve, Salveto, Cedo; avete, avetote, ſalvete, ſalvetote, cedite.
INF. avere. ſalvere.
IND. *Præſ.* Quæſo, quæſumus.

II. Theſe three Verbs ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Preterite* Tenſe and what is formed from it, and therefore are by ſome called PRETERITIVE Verbs; thus,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odiſſem, odero, odiſſe.
Memini, memineram, meminerim, meminiſſem, meminero, meminiſſe.
Cœpi, cœperam, cœperim, cœpiſſem, cœpero, cœpiſſe.

But under theſe they comprehend alſo the Signification of the other Tenſes; as, *Memini*, I remember, *or* I have remembred; *Memineram*, I remembred, *or* I had remembred, *&c.* So *Odi*, I hate, *or* I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, *or* I have begun. Tho' I am not fully ſatisfied as to this laſt, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly ſignify the Preſent Tenſe.

Memini hath alſo the Imperative *Memento*, Remember thou; *Mementote*, Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembring, which is ſcarcely to be imitated.

To theſe ſome add NOVI, becauſe it frequently hath the Signification of the Preſent, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, tho' it comes from *Noſco*, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odientes* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca*; *Cœpio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voſſ. Analog. Lib.* III. *Cap.* 39.

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cœptus* and *Oſus*, with its Compounds *Peroſus*, *Exoſus*, are in uſe among the beſt Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exodi* are not.

III. *Faris*, To ſpeak, wants the firſt *Perſon* of the *Preſent Indic.* and perhaps the whole *Preſent* of the *Subjunctive*, for we do not ſay *For* or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris*, *fetur*, &c. So likewiſe *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*, To be given. The Compounds of the firſt; as, *Effor*, *affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other; as, *Addor*, *Reddor*, are common.

IV. Moſt of the other Defective Verbs are but ſingle Words, and rarely to be found, but among Poets; as, *Inſit*, he begins; *Defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*, as *Sis* for *Si vis*, If thou wilt; *Sultis*, for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes*, for *Si audes*, If thou dareſt.

Of Impersonal Verbs.

THeſe are alſo a kind of *Defective* Verbs, which for the moſt part are uſed only in the *Third Perſon Sing.* They have the Sign IT before them in Engliſh; as, *Pœnitet*, it repents; *Placet*, it pleaſes: And are thus conjugated;

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluſ.*	*Futur.*
IND.	Pœnitet,	pœnitebat,	pœnituit,	pœnituerat,	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat,	pœniteret,	pœnituerit,	pœnituiſſet,	pœnituerit.
INF.	Pœnitere,	- - -	pœnituiſſe.		

Moſt Verbs may be uſed impersonally in the Paſſive Voice, eſpecially ſuch as otherwiſe have no Paſſive; as,

	Præſ.	*Imperf.*	*Perfect.*	*Pluſquam.*	*Fut.*
Ind.	Pugnatur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum { eſt, fuit,	-atum { erat, fuerat	pugnabitur.
Sub.	Pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum { ſit, fuerit,	-atum { eſſet, fuiſſet,	-atum fuerit.
Inf.	Pugnari,	- - - -	pugnatum { eſſe, fuiſſe,	- - - -	pugnatum iri.

NOT,

Digitized by Google

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any *Person* or *Number*, by putting that which ſtands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals in the Caſes which they govern; as, *pœnitet me, te, illum*; I repent, thou repenteſt, he repenteth, inſtead of *Ego pœniteo*, &c. which is ſcarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi*, It pleaſes me, thee, him; or I pleaſe, thou pleaſeſt, *&c. pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fighteſt, he fighteth, *&c.*

NOTE, 2. That *Impersonals* are not uſed in the *Imperative*, but inſtead of it we take the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 3. That *Impersonal* Verbs are very often uſed *perſonally*, eſpecially in the *Plural* Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, Dolet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Præſtat*, &c. For we ſay, *Tu mihi ſola places*; *Nulli noceo*; *Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt*; *Parvum parva decent*, &c. But it is to be remarked that they are generally *Impersonal*, when an *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* Mood follows; for tho' I can ſay, *Tu places mihi*, yet I cannot ſay, *Si places audire*, but *ſi placet tibi audire*. Again, we cannot ſay, *Ego contigit eſſe domi*, but *Me contigit eſſe domi*, or *Mihi contigit eſſe domi*. Likewiſe *Evenit illum mori*, or *Ut ille morerctur*; but not *Ille evenit mori*.

[*I ſhall not here enquire what is the* Word *underſtood to* Impersonal *Verbs, whether it is a* Noun *of the like* Signification; *as*, Pugna pugnatur, *or the Word* Res *or* Negotium, *or the* Infinitive *Mood. Tho' I incline to think that any one of theſe will not anſwer to them all, but that there are ſome to which the firſt, to others the ſecond, and to others the third, may be moſt fitly underſtood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Senſe ſhall direct us. This we are ſure of, that the Word* underſtood *can never be a Perſon properly ſo called, but a* Thing; *for which Reaſon, and the Want of the two primary* Perſons, viz. *the* firſt *and* ſecond, *they are called* Impersonal, *tho' ſome are much offended with the* Name.]

CAP. IV.
De Participio.

TRia ſunt præcipuè conſideranda in Participio, viz. *Tempus*, *Significatio*, & *Declinatio*.

I. Tempora Participiorum ſunt Tria, *Præſens*, *Præteritum* & *Futurum*.

Participia { Præſ. / Præt. / Fut. } Temp. deſinunt in { ns. / tus, ſus, xus. / rus, dus. }

II. Significatio Participiorum eſt vel *Activa* vel *Paſſiva*, vel *Neutra*, ad modum verborum à quibus deſcendunt.

CHAP. IV.
Of Participle.

THere are three Things eſpecially to be conſidered in a Participle, viz. Time, Signification *and* Declenſion.

I. *The Tenſes of Participles are three, the* Preſent, Preterite *and* Future.

Particip. of the { *Preſ.* / *Pret.* / *Fut.* } *Teriſe end in* { ns. / tus, ſus, xus. / rus, dus. }

II. *The Signification of Participles is either* Active *or* Paſſive, *or* Neuter, *after the Manner of the Verbs from wh they come.*

Digitized by Google

Participia

- in *ns* & *rus* plerumque sunt *Activa*.
- in *dus* semper *Passiva*.
- in *tus*, *sus*, *xus*, plerumque sunt *Passiva*, interdum verò *Activa*, vel etiam *Communia*.

III. Omnia Participia sunt Adjectiva: quæ desinunt in *ns* sunt *Tertiæ Declinationis*, reliqua autem omnia *Primæ* & *Secundæ*,

Participles

- *in* ns *and* rus *are generally* Active.
- *in* dus *always* Passive.
- *in* tus, sus, xus, *are generally* Passive, *sometimes* Active, *or also* Common.

III. *All Participles are Adjectives: Those which end in* ns *are of the* Third Declension, *but all the rest are of the* First *and* Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a Kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which in its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Genders and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [See *Chap.* IX.] have two *Participles*, one of the *Present* Time ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving: And another of the *Future* ending in *rus*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two *Participles*, one of the *Preterite* ending in *tus*, *sus* or *xus*; as *Amatus*, Loved; *Visus*, Seen; *Flexus*, Bowed, (to which some add one in *uus*, *viz. Mortuus* Dead:) And another of the *Future* ending in *dus*; as *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two *Participles*, as the Active; as *Sedens*, Sitting, *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three *Participles*, as *Carens*, Wanting; *Cariturus*, About to want, *Carendus*, To be wanted; *Dolens*, Grieving; *Doliturus*, About to grieve, *Dolendus*, To be grieved: And sometimes four; as *Vigilans*, Watching; *Vigilaturus*, About to watch, *Vigilatus*, Watched; *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four *Participles*; as, *Loquens*, Speaking; *Locuturus*. About to speak, *Locutus*, Having spoken, *Loquendus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*. Vouchsafing, *Dignaturus*, About to vouchsafe, *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, *or* being vouchsafed, *Dignandus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, 1. That in some *Deponent* Verbs the *Participle Perfect* hath both an *Active* and *Passive* Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only Active; as, *Testatus*, having testified, *or* being testified. So *Mentitus*, *Meditatus*, *Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated, *Larvatus*, Masked; and such like, are not Participles, because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And *Ignarus*, Ignorant, *Elegans*, Neat, *Circumspectus*, Circumspect, *Tacitus*, Silent, *Falsus*, *Profusus*, Prodigal, &c. are not Participles, because they do not include Time.

Digitized by Google

There

There are a Kind of Adjective Nouns ending in UNDUS, which approach very near to the Nature of *Participles*, such as *Errabundus*, *Ludibundus*, *Populabundus*. They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Indic.* and their Signification is much the same with the *Participle* of the *Present* Time; only they signify *Abundance*, or a great deal of the Action, according to *A. Gellius*, *Lib.* 2. *Cap.* 15. or according to others, they signify the same with the *Participles* of *Frequentative* Verbs, when these are not in Use. See *Gronovius* on *Gellius*, as above cited.

APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and SUPINES (which, because of their near Relation to Verbs, are by some not improperly called *Participial* Words) are a Sort of *Substantive* Nouns expressing the Action of the Verb in general, or in the Abstract. GERUNDS are *Substantives* of the second Declension, and complete in all their Cases, except the *Vocative*. SUPINES are Substantives of the fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the *Accusative* in UM, which makes the *First Supine*, and the *Ablative* in U, which makes the *Second*.

[Vossius, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. *thinks that the* Last Supine *may sometimes be a* Dative; *as*, Durum tactu, *i. e.* tactui; *For the Datives of the* Fourth *Declension of old ended in* u. *Also* Lib. 7. Cap. 8. *he takes Notice that tho' these Supines have sometimes other Cases,* (*as* irrisui esse) *yet they are only reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the* First *come after Verbs of Motion, and the* Second *after Adjective Nouns: Thus* dignus irrisu *is a* Supine (*according to them*) Non sine irrisu audientium, *is not.*]

De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.

CAP. V.

De Adverbio.

IN ADVERBIO potissimùm spectanda est ejus *Significatio*.

Adverbiorum Significationes variæ sunt: earum verò præcipuæ ad sequentia capita revocari possunt.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.

CHAP. V.

Of Adverb.

IN an ADVERB is chiefly to be considered its Signification.

The Significations of Adverbs are various: But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quality or Manner of their Signification.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE, are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time* and *Order*.

Digitized by Google

Rudiments of the *Latin Tongue*,

Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold, *viz. Adverbs signifying Motion*

UBI?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic, Isthic, Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Foris,	*Without.*
Ubique,	*Every where.*
Nusquam,	*No where.*
Alicubi,	*Some where.*
Alibi,	*Elsewhere.*
Ubivis,	*Any where.*
Ibidem,	*In the same Place.*
QUO?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc, Isthuc,	*Thither.*
Intro,	*To within.*
Foras,	*To without.*
Eo,	*To that Place.*
Alio,	*To another Place.*
Aliquo,	*To some Place.*
Eodem,	*To the same Place.*
QUORSUM?	*Whitherward.*
Versus,	*Towards.*
Horsum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorsum,	*Thitherward.*
Surſum,	*Upward.*
Deorsum,	*Downward.*
Antrorsum,	*Forward.*
Retrorsum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorsum,	*To the right Hand.*
Sinistrorsum,	*To the left Hand.*
UNDE?	*From whence?*
Hinc,	*From hence.*
Illinc, Isthinc, Inde,	*From thence.*
Undique,	*From elsewhere.*
Undique,	*From some Place.*
Undique,	*If from any Place.*
Utrinque,	*On both Sides.*
Superne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlitus,	*From Heaven.*
Funditus,	*From the Ground.*
QUA?	*Which Way?*
Hac, Illac, Isthac,	*This Way.*
Alia,	*That Way.*
	Another Way.

2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold, *viz.* ſuch as ſignify,

(1) *Being in Time, either*

1. *Preſent,*
   - Nunc, — *Now.*
   - Hodie, — *To day.*
2. *Paſt,*
   - Tunc, Tum, — *Then.*
   - Heri, — *Yeſterday.*
   - Dudum, Pridem, — *Heretofore.*
   - Pridie, — *The Day before.*
   - Nudius tertius, — *Three Days ago.*
   - Nuper, — *Lately.*
3. *Future,*
   - *very near,*
     - Jamjam, — *Preſently.*
     - Mox, — *Immediately.*
     - Statim, — *By-and-by.*
     - Protinus, — *Inſtantly.*
     - Illico, — *Straightway.*
   - *remote,*
     - Cras, — *To-morrow.*
     - Poſtridie, — *The Day after.*
     - Perendie, — *Two Days hence.*
     - Nondum, — *Not yet.*
   - QUANDO? — *When?*
4. *Indefinite,*
   - Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum, — *Sometimes.*
   - Semper, — *Ever.*
   - Nunquam, — *Never.*
   - Interim, — *In the meantime.*
   - Quotidie, — *Daily.*

(2) *Continuance of Time.*

- Diu, — *Long.*
- Quamdiu? — *How long?*
- Tamdiu, — *So long.*
- Jamdin, Jamdudum, Jampridem, — *Long ago.*

(2) *Viciſſitude or Repetition of Time.*

1. *Indefinite.*
   - QUOTIES? — *How often?*
   - Sæpe, — *Often.*
   - Raro, — *Seldom.*
   - Toties, — *So often.*
   - Aliquoties, — *For ſeveral times*
   - Viciſſim, Alternatim, — *By Turns.*
   - Rurſus, Iterum, — *Again.*
   - Subinde, Identidem, — *Ever and anon.*
2. *Definite, or in Number.*
   - Semel, — *Once.*
   - Bis, — *Twice.*
   - Ter, — *Thrice.*
   - Quater, — *Four times, &c.*

3. Adverbs

3. *Adverbs* of ORDER; as,

Inde,	*Then.*	Deinceps,	*So forth.*	Primò, -ùm,	*First.*
Deinde,	*Thereafter.*	Denuo,	*Of new.*	Secundò, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*	Denique,	*Finally.*	Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*	Poſtremo,	*Laſtly.*	Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly.*

II. The other *Adverbs* expreſſing QUALITY, MANNER, *&c.* are either *Abſolute* or *Comparative.*

ABSOLUTE, *denoting,*

1. QUALITY ſimply; *as,* Bene, *well*; male, *ill*; fortiter, *bravely*: And innumerable others that come from Adjective *Nouns* or *Participles.*
2. CERTAINTY; *as,* Profectò, certè, ſanè, planè, næ, utique, ita, etiam, *truly, verily, yes*; quidni, *why not?* omnino, *certainly.*
3. CONTINGENCE; *as,* Forte, forſan, fortaſſis, fors, *happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.*
4. NEGATION; *as,* Non, haud, *not*; nequaquam, *not at all*; neutiquam, *by no means*; minime, *nothing leſs.*
5. PROHIBITION; *as,* Ne, *not.*
6. SWEARING; *as,* Hercle, pol, edepol, mecaſtor, *by Hercules, by Pollux,* &c.
7. EXPLAINING; *as,* Utpote, videlicet, ſcilicet, nimirum, nempe, *to wit, namely.*
8. SEPARATION; *as,* Seorſum, *apart*; ſeparatim, *ſeparately*; ſigillatim, *one by one*; viritim, *Man by Man*; oppidatim, *Town by Town,* &c.
9. JOINING TOGETHER; *as,* Simul, unà, pariter, *together*; generaliter, *generally*; univerſaliter, *univerſally*; plerumque, *for the moſt part.*
10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT; *as,* En, ecce, *lo, behold.*
11. INTERROGATION; *as,* Cur, quare, quamobrem, *why, wherefore?* Num, an, *whether?* Quomodo, quî, *how? To which add,* Ubi, quo, quorſum, unde, qua, quando, quamdiu, quoties.

COMPARATIVE *denoting,*

1. EXCESS; *as,* Valde, maximè, magnopere, ſummopere, admodum, oppido, perquam, longe, *very much, exceedingly*; nimis, nimium, *too much*; prorſus, penitus, omninò, *altogether, wholly*; magis, *more*; melius, *better*; pejus, *worſe*; fortius, *more bravely: And* optime, *beſt*; peſſime, *worſt*; fortiſſime, *moſt bravely*; and innumerable others of the *Comparative* and *Superlative* Degrees.
2. DEFECT; *as,* Ferme, ferè, propè, propemodum, penè, *almoſt*; parum, *little*; paulo, paullulum, *very little.*
3. PREFERENCE; *as,* potiùs, ſatiùs, *rather*; potiſſimum, præcipuè, præſertim, *chiefly, eſpecially*; imò, *yes, nay, nay rather.*
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; *as,* Ita, ſic, adeo, *ſo*; ut, uti, ſicut, ſicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quaſi, *as, as if*; quemadmodum, *even as*; ſatis, *enough*; itidem, *in like Manner.*
5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; *as,* Aliter, ſecus, *otherwiſe*; alioqui or alioquin, *elſe*; nedum, *much more* or *much leſs.*
6. ABATEMENT; *as,* Senſim, paullatim, pedetentim, *by Degrees, piece meal*; vix, *ſcarcely*; ægre, *hardly, with Difficulty.*
7. EXCLUSION; *as,* Tantùm, ſolùm, modò, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, *only.*

Digitized by Google

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS ſeem originally to have been contrived to expreſs compendiouſly in one Word what muſt otherwiſe have required two or more; as, *Sapienter*, wiſely, for *cum ſapientia*; *bic*, for *in hoc loco*; *ſemper*, for *in omni tempore*; *ſemel*, for *una vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Hercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing elſe but *Adjective Nouns* or *Pronouns*, having the *Preposition* and *Subſtantive* underſtood; as, *quò*, *eò*, *eodem*; for *ad quæ*, *ea*, *eadem* [*loca*]; or *cui*, *ei*, *eidem*, [*loco*]; for of old theſe Datives ended in *o*. Thus, *qua*, *hac*, *illac*, &c. are plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl. ſing. femin.* the Word *via*, a Way, and *in*, being underſtood. Many of them are Compounds; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo*; *quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quamobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [*pro*] *qua re*; *quorſum*, i. e. *verſus quem* [*locum*]; *ſcilicet*, i. e. *ſcire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *ilicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *mirum*, i. e. *ni* [*eſt*] *mirum*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That of *Adverbs* of *Place*, theſe of the Firſt Kind anſwer to the Queſtion *ubi?* the Second to *quo?* the Third to *quorſum?* the Fourth to *unde?* and the Fifth to *qua?* To which might be added a Sixth, *quouſque*, How far? anſwered by *Uſque*, until; *Hucuſque*, Hitherto; *Eouſque*, ſo far; *Hactenus*, hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus*, ſo far as; *Quadantenus*, in ſome Meaſure. But theſe are equally applied to *Place* and *Time*.

NOTE, 3. That *Adverbs* of *Time* of the Firſt Kind anſwer to *quando?* of the Second to *quamdiu* and *quamdudum* or *quampridem?* of the Third to *quoties?*

NOTE, 4. That *Adverbs* of *Quality* generally anſwer to the Queſtion *quomodo?*

NOTE, 5. That ſome *Adverbs* of *Time*, *Place*, and *Order*, are frequently uſed the one for the other; as *Ubi*, where *and* when; *inde* from that Place, from that Time, thereafter, next; *hactenus* thus far, with reſpect to Place, Time or Order, *&c.* Other *Adverbs* alſo may be claſſed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That ſome *Adverbs* of *Time* are either *paſt*, *preſent* or *future*; as, *Jam*, already, now, by and by; *Olim*, long ago, ſometime hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That *Interrogative Adverbs* of *Time* and *Place*, doubled or with the Adjection *cunque* anſwer to the Engliſh Adjection *ſoever*; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, whereſoever; *quoquo* or *quocunque*, whitherſoever, *&c.* And the ſame holds alſo in other *Interrogative* Words; as, *quiſquis*, or *quicunque*, whoſoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many ſoever; *quantus quantus*, or *quantuſcunque*, how great ſoever; *qualis qualis* or *qualiscunque*, of what Kind or Quality ſoever; *ut ut*, or *utcunque*, however, *or* howſoever, *&c.*

CAP. VI.
De Præpoſitione.

1. PRæpoſitiones quæ regunt Accuſativum ſunt viginti octo, *viz.*

Ad,	*To.*
Apud,	*At.*
Ante,	*Before.*

CHAP. VI.
Of Preposition.

I. THE *Prepoſitions which govern the Accuſative are twenty eight*, viz.

Adverſus,	*Againſt.*
Adverſum,	
Contra,	

Cis,

Digitized by Google

Cis, Citra,	*On this Side.*
Circa, Circum,	*About.*
Erga,	*Towards.*
Extra,	*Without.*
Inter,	*Between, among.*
Intra,	*Within.*
Infra,	*Beneath.*
Juxta,	*Nigh to.*
Ob,	*For.*
Propter,	*For, hard by.*
Per,	*By, through.*
Præter,	*Besides, except.*
Penes,	*In the Power of.*
Post,	*After.*
Pone,	*Behind.*
Secus,	*By, along.*
Secundum,	*According to.*
Supra,	*Above.*
Trans,	*On the farther Side.*
Ultra,	*Beyond.*

II. Præpositiones quæ regunt Ablativum sunt quindecim, nempe,

II. *The Prepositions which govern the Ablative are Fifteen,* viz.

A, Ab, Abs,	*From.*
Absque,	*Without.*
Cum,	*With.*
Clam,	*Without the Knowledge of.*
Coram,	*Before.*
De,	*Of, concerning.*
E, Ex,	*Of, out of.*
Pro,	*For.*
Præ,	*Before.*
Palam,	*With the Knowledge of.*
Sine,	*Without.*
Tenus,	*Up to.*

III. Hæ quatuor interdum Accusativum, interdum Ablativum regunt.

III. *These four govern sometimes the Accusative, and sometimes the Ablative.*

In,	*In, into.*
Sub,	*Under.*
Super,	*Above.*
Subter,	*Beneath.*

A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word, shewing the Relation of one Substantive Noun to another.

NOTE, That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur: and *Prope*, nigh; *Usque*, unto; *Circiter*, about; *Versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the *Prepositions* governing the *Accusative*; and *Procul*, far, among those governing the *Ablative*, are *Adverbs*; and do not govern a Case of themselves, but by the Preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first four, and *a* or *ab* to the last. To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is joined very frequently with the *Accusative*; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; *a* being understood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Besides the separate Use of these PREPOSITIONS, there is another Use arises from them, namely, their being put before a vast Number of Nouns, and Verbs in *Composition*, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Elegance and Beauty to the *Latin* Tongue.

Digitized by Google

There are five or six *Syllables*, viz. AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in *compound* Words: However they generally add something to the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	signifies	*round about*,	as,	ambio,	*to surround.*
Di,		*asunder*,		divello,	*to pull asunder.*
Dis,				distraho,	*to draw asunder.*
Re,		*again*,		relego,	*to read again.*
Se,		*aside* or *apart*,		sepono,	*to lay aside.*
Con,		*together*,		concresco,	*to grow together.*

CHAP. VII.

Of Interjection.

AN INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse, to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

Some of them express,

1. JOY; *as*, Evax, *hey, brave, io.*
2. GRIEF; *as*, Ah, hei, heu, eheu, *ah, alas, woes me.*
3. WONDER; *as*, Papæ, *O strange*; Vah, *hah.*
4. PRAISE; *as*, Euge, *well done.*
5. AVERSION; *as*, Apage, *away, begone, fy, tush.*
6. EXCLAIMING; *as*, Oh, proh, *O.*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; *as*, Atat, *ha, aha,*
8. IMPRECATION; *as*, Væ, *woe, pox on't.*
9. LAUGHTER; *as*, Ha, ha, he.
10. SILENCING; *as*, Au, 'ſt, pax, *silence, huſh, 'ſt.*
11. CALLING; *as*, Eho, io, ho, *ſo ho, ho, O.*
12. DERISION; *as*, Hui, *away with.*
13. ATTENTION; *as*, Hem, *hah.*

NOTE, 1. That the same *Interjection* denotes sometimes one Passion and sometimes another; as, *Vah*, which is used to express *Joy* and *Sorrow* and *Wonder*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are *natural Sounds* common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That *Nouns* are used sometimes for *Interjections*; as, *Malum!* With a Pox! With a Mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the Villany!

INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word, and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Suddenness and Quickness of the other.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Conjunction.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together; and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another.

Of

Digitized by Google

Of theſe ſome are called,

1. COPULATIVE; *as*, Et, ac, atque, que, *and*; etiam, quoque, item, *alſo*; cum, tum, *both, and*. Alſo their *Contraries*, Nec, neque, neu, neve, *neither, nor*.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; *as*, Aut, ve, vel, ſeu, ſive, *either, or*.
3. CONCESSIVE; *as*, Etſi, etiamſi, tametſi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, *tho', altho', albeit*.
4. ADVERSATIVE; *as*, Sed, verum, autem, at, aſt, atqui, *but*; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, *yet, notwithſtanding, neverthleſs*.
5. CAUSAL; *as*, Nam, namque, enim, *for*; quia, quippe, quoniam, *becauſe*; quod, *that, becauſe*.
6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; *as*, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, *therefore*; quapropter, quocirca, *wherefore*; proinde, *therefore*; cum, quum, *ſeeing, ſince*; quandoquidem, *foraſmuchas*.
7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; *as*, Ut, uti, *that, to the end that*.
8. CONDITIONAL; *as*, Si, ſin, *if*; dum, modo, dummodo, *provided, upon Condition that*; ſiquidem, *if indeed*.
9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; *as*, Ni, niſi, *unleſs, except*.
10. DIMINUTIVE; *as*, Saltem, certe, *at leaſt*.
11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; *as*, An, anne, num, *whether*; ne, annon, *whether, not*; necne, *or not*.
12. EXPLETIVE; *as*, Autem, vero, *now, truly*; quidem, equidem, *indeed*.
13. ORDINATIVE; *as*, Deinde, *thereafter*; denique, *finally*; inſuper, *moreover*; cæterum, *moreover, but, however*.
14. DECLARATIVE; *as*, Videlicet, ſcilicet, nempe, nimirum, *&c. to wit, namely*.

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; as, *An, anne, &c.* are *Suſpenſive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs*. The ſame may be ſaid of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs* of *Order* and *Explaining*. So likewiſe *Utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb* of *Wiſhing*, when more narrowly conſidered, is nothing elſe but the Conjunction *Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [I wiſh] underſtood; as, *Utinam adfuiſſes; Ut te Deus male perdat*; ſupple *Opto*. But ſince both of them are indeclinable, there is no great Need of being very nice in diſtinguiſhing them.

NOTE, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together, ſupply the Place of *Conjunctions*; as, *Poſtea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, becauſe, *&c.* Which are made up of the Prepoſitions *poſt, præter*, and *propter*, with *ea* the Pronoun.

NOTE, 3. That ſome *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, ſtand firſt in a Sentence; as, *Et, aut, nec, ſi*, &c. Some contrary to their natural Order, ſtand in the ſecond Place, *viz. autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: And ſome may indifferently be put either firſt or ſecond, *viz. Namque, etenim, ſiquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque*, &c. Hence aroſe the Diviſion of them into *Prepoſitive, Subjunctive* and *Common*.

¶ CHAP.

Digitized by Google

¶ CHAP. IX.

APPENDIX, containing ſome Obſervations concerning the various Diviſions and Significations of Words, eſpecially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. ALL Words whatſoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A SIMPLE Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *Juſtus, lego*. A COMPOUND [*Compoſitum*] is that which is made up of two or more Words, or of a Word and ſome Syllabical Adjection; as, *Injuſtus, perlego, derelinquo, egomet*.

2. All Words whatſoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A PRIMITIVE Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Juſtus, lego*. A DERIVATIVE [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as *Juſtitia, lectio*.

I. Beſides the more general *Diviſions* of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned *p.* 5 and 22. there are other particular *Diviſions* of them taken from their various *Significations* and *Derivations*: The moſt remarkable whereof are theſe;

I. With reſpect to *Signification*.

1. A COLLECTIVE [*Collectivum*] is a Subſtantive Noun which ſignifies many in the ſingular Number; as, *Populus*, a People; *exercitus*, an Army.

2. An INTERROGATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we ask a Queſtion; as, *Quis?* Who? *Uter?* Which of the two? *Qualis?* Of what Kind? *Quantus?* How great? *Quot?* How many? And theſe, when they are uſed without a Queſtion, are called INDEFINITES.

3. A RELATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has reſpect to ſomething ſpoken before; as, *Qui, ille, ipſe*, &c. *Alius, alter, reliquus, cætera, -um, qualis, quantus*, &c.

4. PARTITIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which ſignifies many ſeverally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis, nullus, quiſque*, &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo*, &c.

5. A NUMERAL Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which ſignifies Number, (of which there are four principal Kinds:)

(1.) CARDINAL, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *Unus, duo, tres*, &c.
(2.) ORDINAL, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *Primus, ſecundus, tertius*, &c.
(3.) DISTRIBUTIVE, [*Diſtributivus*]; as *Singuli, bini, terni*, &c.
(4.) MULTIPLICATIVE, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex, duplex, triplex*, &c.

II. With reſpect to *Signification* and *Derivation*.

1. A PATRONYMICK Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Subſtantive Noun derived from another Subſtantive proper, ſignifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides*, the Son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Æetias*, the Daughter of *Æetes*; *Nerine*, the Daughter of *Nereus*. *Patronymicks* are generally derived from the Name of the *Father*, but the Poets (for others ſeldom uſe them) derive them alſo from the *Grandfather*, or ſome other remarkable Perſon of the *Family*; nay ſometimes from the *Founder* of a Nation or People, and alſo from Countries and Cities; as, *Æacides*, the Son, Grandſon, Great-grandſon, or one of the Poſterity of *Æacus*; *Romulidæ*, the *Romans* from their firſt King *Romulus*; *Sicelis, Troas*,

a

Digitized by Google

a Woman of *Sicily*, of *Troy*, &c. *Patronymicks* of Men end in *des*; of Women in *is*, *as*, and *ne*. These in *des* and *ne* are of the *First*, and these in *is* and *as* of the *Third* Declension.

2. An ABSTRACT Noun [*Abstractum*] is a Substantive derived from an Adjective expressing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the Quality is: as, *Bonitas*, Goodness; *Dulcedo*, Sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these Abstracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called CONCRETES, because, besides the Quality, they also confusedly signify something as the Subject of it, without which they cannot make Sense.

3. A GENTILE or PATRIAL Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive proper, signifying one's Country; as *Scotus*, *Macedo*, *Arpinas*, *Edinburgensis*, *Taodunanus*; a Man born in *Scotland*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgh*, *Dundee*; from *Scotia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*, *Edinburgum*, *Taodunum*.

4. A POSSESSIVE Noun [*Possessivum*] is an Adjective derived from a Substantive whether Proper or Appellative, signifying Possession or Property; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Paternus*, *Herilis*, *Fœmineus*, of or belonging to *Scotland*, *Hercules*, a Father, a Master, a Woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Herus*, *Fœmina*.

5. A DIMINUTIVE Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Substantive or Adjective respectively, importing a Diminution or lessening of its Signification; as, *Libellus*, a little Book; *Chartula*, a little Paper; *Opusculum*, a little Work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*; *Parvulus*, very little; *Candidulus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same Gender with their Primitives.

6. A DENOMINATIVE Noun [*Denominativum*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia*, Favour; *Vinea*, a Vineyard; *Senator*, a Senator; from *gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*: *Cœlestis*, heavenly; *Humanus*, humane; *Aureus*, golden; from *cœlum*, *homo*, *aurum*.

7. A VERBAL Noun [*Verbale*] is a Substantive or Adjective derived from a Verb; as, *Amor*, Love; *Doctrina*, Learning; *Lectio*, a Lesson; *Auditus*, Hearing; from *Amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio*; *Amabilis*, lovely; *Capax*, capable; *Volucer*, swift; from *Amo*, *capio*, *volo*.

8. Lastly, There are some Nouns derived from *Participles*, *Adverbs* and *Prepositions*; as, *Fictitius*, counterfeit; *Crastinus*, belonging to the Morrow; *Contrarius*, contrary; from *Fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE, That the same Nouns, according to the different Respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above mentioned Classes; as, *Quis* is an *Interrogative*, *Relative* or *Partitive*; *Pietas*, an *Abstract* or *Denominative*.

II. *Pronouns* are divided into four Classes, *viz.*

1. DEMONSTRATIVES, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*.
2. RELATIVES, *Ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.
3. POSSESSIVES, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.
4. PATRIALS or GENTILES, *Nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

Of them also two are INTERROGATIVES, *Quis* and *cujas*.

III. 1. Verbs with respect to their *Figure* or *Frame*, are either SIMPLE; as, *Amo*, I love: Or, COMPOUND; as, *Redamo*, I love again.

2. With

Digitized by Google

2. With reſpect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either PRIMITIVE; as, *Lego*, I read: or DERIVATIVE, as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With reſpect to their *Conjugation*, are either REGULAR; as, *Amo*: or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo, vis*, &c.

4. With reſpect to their *Conſtituent Parts*, are either COMPLETE; as *Amo*: or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam*: or REDUNDANT; as, *Edo, edis, & es*, &c.

5. With reſpect to their *Perſons*, are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo*; or IMPERSONAL; as, *Pœnitet*.

6. With reſpect to their *Terminations*, they end either in O; as, *Amo*: or in R; as, *Amor*: or in M; as, *Sum*.

7. With reſpect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*.

(1.) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [*Subſtantivum*] is that which ſignifies ſimply the Affirmation of Being or Exiſtence; as, *Sum, fio, exiſto*, I am.

(2.) An ADJECTIVE Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as, *Amo*: i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active*, *Paſſive* and *Neuter*.

[1.] An ACTIVE Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Perſon or Nominative before it; as, *Amo, loquor, curro*.

[2.] A PASSIVE Verb [*Paſſivum*] is that which affirms Paſſion of its Perſon or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A NEUTER Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Paſſion of its Nominative; but ſimply ſignifies the State, Poſture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto, ſedeo, maneo, duro, vireo, flaveo, ſapio, quieſco*, &c. *To ſtand, ſit, ſtay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wiſe, to reſt*.

An *Active Verb* is again divided into *Tranſitive* and *Intranſitive*.

[1.] An *Active* TRANSITIVE Verb [*Tranſitivum*] is that whoſe Action paſſeth from the Agent to ſome other Thing; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2.] An *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verb [*Intranſitivum*] is that whoſe Action paſſeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Queſtion WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational Anſwer can be returned, the Verb is *Tranſitive*; as, *Whom* or *What do you teach?* Anſw. *A Boy, the Grammar*; If not, it is *Intranſitive*: as, *What do you run, go, come, live, ſleep*, &c. To which no rational Anſwer can be given, unleſs it be by a Word of like Signification, which ſometimes indeed theſe Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleaſant Life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the ſame Verb is ſometimes *Tranſitive*, and ſometimes *Intranſitive*; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an Action, *Plaut*.

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive* Verbs are often engliſhed with the Sign of a paſſive Verb; as, *Caleo*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive* Verbs want the Paſſive Voice, unleſs *impersonally* uſed, as *the Intranſitive* Verbs moſt frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur, itur, ventumeſt*.

Tho' all Verbs whatſoever, with reſpect to their Signification, belong to ſome one or other of the foregoing Claſſes; yet becauſe Grammarians together

Digitized by Google

gether with the *Signification* of Verbs, are obliged also to consider their *Termination*, and finding that all *Active* Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all *Passives* in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two or three other *Classes* or *Kinds* of them, *viz. Deponent, Common*, and *Neuter-passive*.

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Passive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Loquor*, I speak; *morior*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Passive Termination has a Signification either Active or Passive; as, *Criminor*, I accuse, *or* I am accused; *Dignor*, I think, *or* I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER PASSIVE [*Neutro-passivum*] is that which is half Active and half Passive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Passive; as, *Fio, factus sum*, To be made. Or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo, ausus sum*, To dare; *gaudeo, gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kind of *Derivative* Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deserve to be remarked, *viz. Frequentatives, Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba frequentativa*] signify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the first; as, *Clamito*, to cry frequently, from *clamo*; *dormito*, to sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro, cursо, cursito; jacio, jacto, jactito; pello, pulso, pulsito*, and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [*Verba inceptiva*] signify that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the Second Person Sing. Pres. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the Third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo, cales, calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba desiderativa*] signify a Desire of Action. They are formed from the last Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Cœnaturio*, I desire to sup; *Esurio*, I am hungry, *or* I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, In *Construction*, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as, *Vocative* Verbs, or Verbs of *naming*, Verbs of *remembring*, of *want*, of *teaching*, of *accusing*, &c.

In the preceeding Division *of* Verbs, *with respect to their* Signification, *I have receded a little from the common* Method; *and in particular I have given a different Account of* Neuter *Verbs from that commonly received by* Grammarians, *who comprise under them all* Intransitive *Verbs, tho' their* Significations *be never so much* Active. *But this I did partly from the Reason of the* Name, *which imports a* Negation *both of* Action *and* Passion, *and partly to give a distinct View of the* Significations *of* Verbs *without regard to their* Terminations, *which in that respect are purely* accidental *and* arbitrary.

I have also excluded from the Divisions *of* Verbs *those called* NEUTRAL PASSIVES [*Lat.* Neutra-passiva] *because originally they are* Active *Verbs; for the primary* Signification *of* vapulo *is* pereo *or* ploro; *of* exulo, extra solum eo; *of* veneo, venum eo; *of* nubo, velo. Liceo *indeed is a very singular Verb, for in the* Active Voice *it signifies* passively, *and in the* Passive, actively

Digitized by Google

PARS TERTIA.
De Sententiis, sive Oratione.

SENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata; ut, *Tu legis; Tu legis libros; Tu legis libros bonos; Tu legis libros bonos domi* (*a*).

PART THIRD.
Of Sentences, or Speech.

A *SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind expreſt by two or more Words put together; as*, You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.

CAP. I.
De Syntaxi, sive Conſtructione.

SYNTAXIS est recta vocum in Oratione Compoſitio.

Ejus partes ſunt duæ, *Concordantia* & *Regimen* (*b*).

CHAP. I.
Of Syntax, or Conſtruction.

SYNTAX is the right Ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord *and* Government.

Con-

(*a*) We are now arrived at the principal Part of *Grammar*; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Uſe to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unleſs we can alſo apply them to Practice, and make them anſwer the great Purpoſes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two things abſolutely neceſſary, *viz.* I. That in Speech we diſpoſe and frame our Words according to the Laws and Rules eſtabliſhed among thoſe whoſe Language we ſpeak. II. That in like Manner we know what is ſpoken and written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and reſolve it into the ſeveral Parts of which it is made up. The firſt of theſe is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the ſecond is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The firſt ſhews us how to ſpeak the Language ourſelves, and the ſecond how to underſtand it when ſpoken by others. But it muſt be owned that there is ſuch a neceſſary Connection between them, that he that is Maſter of the firſt cannot be ignorant of the ſecond.

(*b*) NOTE, 1. That the Difference between *Concord* and *Government* conſiſts chiefly in this, that in *Concord* there can no Change be made in the *Accidents*, that is, *Gender*, *Caſe*, *Number* or *Perſon* of the one, but the like Change muſt alſo be made in the other: But in *Government*, the firſt Word (declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the ſecond. In *Con-* the firſt Word may be called the *Word directing*, and the ſecond the *Word*

Digitized by Google

Concordantia eſt quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibuſdam accidentibus.

Regimen eſt quando dictio regit certum caſum.

Concord *is when one Word agrees with another in ſome Accidents.*

Government *is when a Word governs a certain Caſe.*

I. *De Concordantia.*

COncordantia eſt quadruplex,

1. *Adjectivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*

2. *Verbi* cum *Nominativo.*

3. *Relativi* cum *Antecedente.*

4. *Subſtantivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*

REGULA I.

ADjectivum concordat cum Subſtantivo in genere, numero & caſu; ut,

[a] *Vir* [b] *bonus.*
[a] *Fœmina* [b] *caſta.*
[b] *Dulce* [a] *pomum.*

I. Of Concord.

CConcord is fourfold,

1. *Of an* Adjective *with a* Subſtantive.

2. *Of a* Verb *with a* Nominative.

3. *Of a* Relative *with an* Antecedent.

4. *Of a* Subſtantive *with a* Subſtantive.

RULE I.

AN *Adjective agrees with a Subſtantive in Gender, Number and Caſe; as,* 1

A good Man.
A chaſte Woman.
A ſweet Apple.

Word directed: In *Government* the firſt is called the *Word governing*, and the ſecond the *Word governed.*

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Eaſe both of Maſter and Scholar, we have noted theſe Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *Directing* or *Governing* with [a], and the Word *Directed* or *Governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *Directing* or *Governing*, the firſt with [a], and the ſecond with [aa]; and where two Words *Directed* or *Governed*, the firſt with [b] and the ſecond with [bb].

Number 1. NOTE, 1. That the Way to find out the *Subſtantive* is to ask the Queſtion WHO or WHAT? to the *Adjective*; for that which anſwers to it is the *Subſtantive.* And the ſame Queſtion put to the *Verb* or *Relative*, diſcovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent.*

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* ſometimes ſupplies the Place of a *Subſtantive*; as *Amicus certus*, a ſure Friend; *Bona ferina*, Good Veniſon, *Homo* being underſtood to *Amicus*, and *Caro* to *Ferina.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Subſtantive* THING [*Negotium*] is moſt frequently underſtood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the *Neuter* Gender, as if it were a *Subſtantive*; as, *Triſte* [ſupple *Negotium*] i. e. *Res triſtis*, A ſad Thing. *Bona*, [ſupple *Negotia*] i. e. *Res bonæ*, Good Things.

Digitized by Google

REG. II.

2 VERBUM concordat cum Nominativo ante se in numero & perſona; ut,

[a] *Ego* [a] *lego.*
[a] *Tu* [b] *ſcribis.*
[a] *Præceptor* [b] *docet.*

RULE II.

A Verb agrees with the Nominative before it in Number and Perſon; as,

I read.
You write.
The Maſter teacheth.

ANNOTATIONES.

3 1. VERBA Subſtantiva, Vocandi & Geſtûs habent utrinque Nominativum ad eandam rem pertinentem; ut,

[b] *Ego* [a] *ſum* [bb] *diſcipulus.*
[b] *Tu* [a] *vocaris* [bb] Joannes.
[b] *Illa* [a] *incedit* [bb] *Regina.*

1. *Subſtantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Geſture have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the ſame thing; as,*

I am a Scholar.
You are named *John.*
She walks [as] a Queen.

4 2. ¶ EXCEP. Infinitivus Modus Accuſativum ante ſe habet; ut,

Gaudeo [b] *te* [a] *valere.*

2. ¶ *EXCEP. The Infinitive Mood has an Accuſative before it; as,*

I am glad that you are well.

3. ¶ *ESSE*

Num. 2. NOTE, That the *Infinitive* Mood frequently ſupplies the Place of the *Nominative*; as, *Mentiri non eſt meum*, To lie is not mine, [or my Property.]

Num. 3. 1. *Subſtantive* Verbs are *Sum, fio, forem* and *exiſto.*

2. Verbs of *Naming* are theſe Paſſives, *Appellor, dicor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*; to which add, *Videor, exiſtimor, creor, conſtituor, ſalutor, deſignor*, &c.

3. Verbs of *Geſture* are, *Eo, incedo, venio, cubo, ſto, ſedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, ſomnio, maneo*, &c.

NOTE, That any *Verb* may have after it the *Nominative* when it *belongs* to the ſame thing with the *Nominative* before it; as *Audivi hoc puer*, I heard it being, [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi rem publicam adoleſcens, non deſeram ſenex*, I defended the Common Wealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not deſert [now that I am] old, *Cic.*

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in *Lat.* QUOD, or UT] comes between two *Verbs*, it is elegantly left out, by turning the *Nominative* Caſe into the *Accuſative*, and the Verb into the *Infinitive* Mood; as *Aiunt regem adventare*, They ſay [that] the King is coming; rather than *Aiunt quod rex adventat. Turpe eſt eos qui bene nati ſunt turpiter vivere.* 'Tis a ſhameful thing that they who are well born ſhould live baſely; rather than, *Ut ii turpiter vivant.* See *p.* 43.

Digitized by Google

3. ¶ *ESSE* habet eundem caſum poſt ſe quem ante ſe; ut,

[a] *Petrus cupit* [a] *eſſe* [bb] *vir doctus.*

Scio [b] *Petrum* [a] *eſſe* [bb] *virum doctum.*

[b] *Mihi* [bb] *negligenti* [a] *eſſe non licet.*

REG. III.

*RELATIVUM *Qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero; ut,

[a] *Vir ſapit* [b] *qui pauca loquitur.*

1. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit Verbo Nominativus; ut,

3. ¶ ESSE *hath the ſames Caſe after it that it hath before it; as,*

Peter deſires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

RULE III.

THE *Relative* Qui, quæ, quod, *agrees with the Antecedent in Gender and Number; as,*

He is a wiſe Man who ſpeaks little.

1. *If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be the Nominative to the Verb; as,*

Præ-

Num. 5. NOTE, 1. That we frequently ſay, *Licet nobis eſſe bonos*; We may be good. *Tibi expedit eſſe ſedulum*, 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuiſſe pium*, It never hurted any Man that he hath been pious: But then the Accuſative, *Nos*, *te*, *illum*, &c. is underſtood; thus, *Licet nobis* [*nos*] *eſſe bonos*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Eſſe*, and the other *Infinitives* of *Subſtantive* Verbs, Verbs of *Naming*, &c. have no *Accuſative* or *Dative* before them, the Word that follows (whether *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*) is to be put in the *Nominative*; as, *Dicitur eſſe vir*, He is ſaid to be a Man. *Non videtur eſſe facturus*, He ſeems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante ſuum obitum*, No Man ſhould be called happy before his Death.

Num. 6. NOTE, 1. That the *Antecedent* is a *Subſtantive* Noun that goes before the *Relative*, and is again underſtood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiſs to teach the Scholar to ſupply it every where; thus, *Beware of Idleneſs*, *which* [Idleneſs] *is an Enemy to Virtue*, Cave ſegnitiem, quæ [*ſegnities*] eſt inimica virtuti. Nay *Cicero* himſelf, but eſpecially *Cæſar*, frequently repeat the *Subſtantive*; as, *In oppidum perfugiſti*, *quo in oppido*, &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, *Cic. Diem dicunt*, *quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they ſhould meet upon the Bank of the River *Rhoſne*, *Cæſ.*

NOTE, 2. That when the *Relative* reſpects a whole *Sentence*, it is put in the Neuter Gender; as, *Joannes mortuus eſt*, *quod mihi ſummo dolori eſt*, John is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the *Perſon* of the *Relative* is always the ſame with that of its *Antecedent*; as, *Ego qui doceo*, I who teach. *Tu qui diſcis*, You who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur*, the Leſſon which is taught.

Digitized by Google

Præceptor [a] *qui* [b] *docet.*
The Master who teacheth.

8 2. At si interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus casus quem Verbum aut Nomen sequens, vel Præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,

2. *But if a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative shall be of that Case, which the Verb or Noun following, or the Preposition going before use to govern; as,*

Deus [b] *quem* [a] *colimus.*
God whom we worship.
[b] *Cujus* [a] *munere vivimus.*
By whose Gift we live.
[b] *Cui nullus est* [a] *similis.*
To whom there is none like.
[a] *A* [b] *quo facta sunt omnia.*
By whom all things were made.

ANNOTATIO.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia Conjunctione [*&, ac, atque,* &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum vel Relativum plurale; ut,

Two or more Substantives singular coupled together with a Conjunction [&, ac, atque, *&c.*] *have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural; as,*

[a] *Petrus & Joannes* [b] *qui* [b] *sunt* [b] *docti.*
Peter and John who are learned.

REG.

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the *Substantives* are of different *Genders*, the *Adjective* or *Relative plural* must agree with the *Masculine* rather than the *Feminine* or *Neuter*; as, *Pater & mater qui sunt mortui*, The Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the *Substantives* signify things *without Life*, the *Adjective*, or *Relative plural*, must be put in the *Neuter* Gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt*, Riches, Honour and Glory are set before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more *Nominatives* are of different *Persons*, the *Verb plural* must agree with the *First Person* rather than the *Second*; and the *Second* rather than the *Third*; as, *Si tu & Tullia valetis, ego & Cicero valemus*, If you and *Tullia* are well, I and *Cicero* are well.

NOTE, 3. That the *Adjective* or *Verb* frequently agree with the *Substantive* or *Nominative* that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, *Et ego in culpa sum & tu*, Both I and you are in the Fault: Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa. Nihil hic deest nisi carmina*, There is nothing here wanting but Charms; or, *Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt.* This Manner of Construction is most usual, when the different Words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same Purpose; as, *Mens, ratio, & consilium in senibus est*, Understanding, Reason and Prudence is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That *Collective* Nouns, because they are equivalent to a *Plural* Number, have sometimes the *Adjective* or *Verb* in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis cæsi*, A Part of them were scourged. *Turba ruunt*, The Crowd rush.

Digitized by Google

REG. IV.

UNUM Substantivum concordat cum alio eandem rem significante in casu; ut,

[a] *Cicero* [b] *Orator.*
[a] *Urbs* [b] *Edinburgum.*
[a] *Filius* [b] *deliciæ matris suæ* (*a*).

RULE IV.

ONE *Substantive agrees* 10 *with another signifying the same thing in Case; as,*

Cicero the Orator.
The City *Edinburgh.*
A Son the Darling of his Mother.

II. *De Regimine.*

REGIMEN est triplex,

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

Of Government.

GOVERNMENT *is threefold,*

1. Of Nouns.
2. Of Verbs.
3. Of Words indeclinable.

I. REGIMEN *Nominum.*

§ 1. *Substantivorum.*

REG. I.

UNUM Substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significans in Genitivo; ut

[a] *Amor* [b] *Dei.*
[a] *Lex* [b] *Naturæ.*

I. *The* Government *of Nouns.*

§ 1. Of Substantives.

RULE I.

ONE *Substantive governs* 11 *another signifying a different thing in the Genitive; as,*

The Love of God.
The Law of Nature.

ANNOTATIONES.

* 1. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habeat Adjectivum

1. *If the last Substantive* 12 *have an Adjective of Praise*

(*a*) To these four *Concords* some add a *Fifth, viz.* That of the *Responsive* agreeing with its *Interrogative* in Case; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater.* Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares? Libro.* What do you want? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule; for the *Responsive*, or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend upon the *Interrogative*, but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined with it; which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam]. *Quo cares?* [Careo] *libro.*

Num. 11. NOTE, 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary *Sign* of this *Genitive.*

NOTE, 2. That the Relative Pronouns, *Ejus, illius, cujus,* &c. Englished, *His, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose,* have their *Substantives* generally understood; as, *Liber ejus,* [supple *Hominis, Fœminæ,* &c.] His Book *or* Her Book. *Libri eorum,* [supple *hominum, fœminarum,* &c.] Their Books.

Digitized by Google

ctivum laudis vel vituperii, in Genitivo vel Ablativo poni poteſt; ut,

a *Vir* b *ſummæ* b *prudentiæ*, vel b *ſummâ* b *prudentiâ*.

a *Puer* b *probæ* b *indolis*, vel b *probâ* b *indole*.

or Diſpraiſe joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative; as,

A Man of great Wiſdom.

A Boy of a good Diſpoſition.

13 * 2. Adjectivum in neutro genere abſque Subſtantivo regit Genitivum; ut,

a *Multum* b *pecuniæ*.

a *Quid* b *rei?*

2. *An Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Subſtantive governs the Genitive; as,*

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

---

§ 2. *Adjectivorum.*

REG. I.

14* ADJECTIVA verbalia vel affectionem animi ſignificantia Genitivum poſtulant; ut,

a *Avidus* b *gloriæ*.

a *Ignarus* b *fraudis*.

a *Memor* b *beneficiorum*.

§ 2. Of Adjectives.

RULE I.

VERBAL Adjectives, or ſuch as ſignify an Affection of the Mind require the Genitive; as,

Deſirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

REG.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*; *Quæ res?*

NOTE, 1. That theſe *Adjectives* which thus govern the *Genitive*, as if they were *Subſtantives*; are generally ſuch as ſignify *Quantity*; as, *Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the *Genitive*, and upon that Account are by many thought real *Subſtantives.*

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. *Adjectives* of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitioſus, avarus, ſtudioſus, curioſus.*

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præſcius, præſagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, conſultus*, &c.

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, neſcius, inſcius, incertus, dubius, anxius, ſollicitus, immemor.*

4. Of GUILT; as, *Conſcius, convictus, manifeſtus, ſuſpectus, reus.*

5. *Verbals* in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax*: And *Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, ſitiens, negligens*, &c.

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, profuſus, ſecurus.*

Digitized by Google

REG. II.

PARTITIVA & partitivè poſita, Comparativa, Superlativa, Interrogativa & quædam Numeralia, Genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

a *Aliquis* b *Philoſophorum.*
a *Senior* b *fratrum.*
a *Doctiſſimus* b *Romanorum.*

a *Quis* b *noſtrum.*
a *Una* b *Muſarum.*
a *Octavus* b *ſapientum.*

REG. III.

ADJECTIVA ſignificantia commodum vel incommodum, ſimilitudinem vel diſſimilitudinem, regunt Dativum; ut,

a *Utilis* b *bello.*
a *Pernicioſus* b *reipublicæ.*
a *Similis* b *patri.*

RULE II.

PARTITIVES *and Words placed partitively, Comparatives, Superlatives, Interrogatives, and ſome Numerals, govern the Genitive plural; as,* 15

Some one of the Philoſophers.
The elder of the Brothers.
The moſt learned of the *Romans.*
Which of us?
One of the Muſes.
The eighth of the wiſe Men.

RULE III.

ADJECTIVES *ſignifying Profit or Diſprofit, Likeneſs or Unlikeneſs, govern the Dative; as,* 16

Profitable for War.
Pernicious to the Common-wealth.
Like his Father.

Num. 15. NOTE, 1. That it is eaſy to know when this Rule takes Place, by reſolving the *Genitive* into *inter* with the *Accuſ.* or *de, e, ex,* with the *Abl.* as, *Optimus Regum,* The beſt of Kings, i. e. *Optimus inter Reges,* or *de, e, ex, Regibus.*

NOTE, 2. That when there are two *Subſtantives* of different *Genders,* the *Partitive,* &c. rather agrees with the firſt than the laſt; as, *Indus fluminum maximus,* Cic. *Leo animalium fortiſſimus,* Plin. Otherwiſe it is of the ſame Gender with the *Subſtantive* it governs; as, *Pauca animalium, Unaquæque fœminarum.*

NOTE, 3. That *Partitives,* &c. take the *Genitive ſingular* of *Collective* Nouns, and do not neceſſarily agree with them in *Gender,* as, *Præſtantiſſimus noſtræ civitatis,* Cic. *Nympharum ſanguinis una,* Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE, 1. That ſome of theſe *Adjectives* govern alſo the *Genitive*; as, *Amicus, inimicus, ſocius, vicinus, par, æqualis, ſimilis, diſſimilis, proprius, communis,* &c.

NOTE, 2. That *Adjectives* ſignifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a Thing, chooſe rather the *Accuſative* with AD, than the *Dative*; ſuch as, *Proclivis, pronus, propenſus, velox, celer, tardus, piger,* &c. as,

Eſt piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

NOTE, 3. That *Adjectives* ſignifying *Fitneſs* or the *contrary,* may have either of them; as, *Aptus, ineptus bello,* or *ad bellum,*

Digitized by Google

17 ¶ Verbalia in BILIS & DUS regunt Dativum; ut,
a *Amandus* vel a *amabilis* b *omnibus*.

Verbals in BILIS *and* DUS *govern the Dative; as,*
To be beloved of all Men.

R E G. IV.

18* ADJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt Accusativum mensuræ; ut,
Columna sexaginta b *pedes* a *alta*.

RULE IV.

ADJECTIVES signifying Dimension govern the Accusative of Measure; as,
A Pillar sixty Foot high.

R E G. V.

19* COMPARATIVUS regit Ablativum qui resolvitur per QUAM; ut,
a *Dulcior* b *melle*.
a *Præstantior* b *auro*.

RULE V.

THE Comparative Degree governs the Ablative, which is resolved by Quàm; *as,*
Sweeter than Honey.
Better than Gold.

R E G. VI.

20* *DIGNUS, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus & Fretus*: Item *Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus,*

RULE VI.

THESE Adjectives, Dignus, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus, *and* Fretus: *Also* Natus, Satus, Or-

&

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this *Dative*.

NOTE, That *Participles* of the *Preter Tense*, and *Passive* Verbs also, especially among the Poets, have frequently the *Dative*, instead of the *Ablative* with A or AB; as, *Nullus eorum mihi visus est*, None of them was seen by me; *Non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The *Adjectives* of DIMENSION are, *Altus*, high or deep; *crassus* or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The Names of MEASURE are, *Digitus*, an Inch; *palmus*, an Handbreadth; *pes*, a Foot; *cubitus*, a Cubit; *ulna*, an Ell; *passus*, a Pace, *&c.*

NOTE, 1. That Verbs signifying *Dimension* likewise have the *Accusative* of *Measure*; as, *Patet tres ulnas*, It is three Ells large, *Virg.*

NOTE, 2. That sometimes the Word of *Measure* is put in the *Ablative*; as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta, duodecim lata*, Liv. *Venter ejus extat sesquipede*, Perf. And sometimes but rarely in the *Genitive*; as, *Nec longiores duodenûm pedum*, Plin.

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitated: *Multo melior*, Much better. *Nihilo pejor*, Nothing worse. *Major solito*, Greater than usual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evades*, The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vilior*, The prouder, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius*, There is none more learned than *Virgil*.

Digitized by Google

& ſimilia, Ablativum petunt; ut,

a *Dignus* b *honore.*
a *Præditus* b *virtute.*
a *Contentus* b *parvo.*
a *Captus* b *oculis.*
a *Fretus* b *viribus.*
a *Ortus* b *regibus.*

Ortus, Editus, *and the like require the Ablative; as,*

Worthy of Honour.
Endued with Virtue.
Content with little.
Blind.
Truſting to his Strength.
Deſcended of Kings.

REG. VII.

ADJECTIVUM copiæ aut inopiæ regit Genitivum vel Ablativum; ut,

a *Plenus* b *iræ* vel b *ira.*
a *Inops* b *rationis.*

RULE VII.

AN Adjective of Plenty or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative; as,

Full of Anger.
Void of Reaſon.

II. REGIMEN *Verborum.*

§ 1. *Perſonalium.*

II. *The* Government *of* Verbs.

§ 1. Of **Perſonal** Verbs.

REG. I.

* SUM quoties poſſeſſionem proprietatem aut officium ſignificat, regit Genitivum; ut,

a *Eſt* b *regis punire rebelles.*

b *Inſipientis* a *eſt dicere, non putâram.*
b *Militum* a *eſt ſuo duci parere.*

RULE I.

SUM *when it ſignifies Poſſeſſion, Property or Duty, governs the Genitive; as,*

It belongs to the King to puniſh Rebels.
It is the Property of a Fool to ſay, I had not thought.
It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

¶ Excipiuntur hi Nominativi, *Meum, tuum, ſuum,* noſtrum, ve-

¶ *Theſe Nominatives,* Me-um, tuum, ſuum, noſtrum, ve-

Num. 21. NOTE, 1. That *Diſtentus, gravidus, refertus*; and *orbus, vacuus, viduus,* chooſe rather the *Ablative*: *Indigus, compos* and *impos* the *Genitive.*

NOTE, 2. That ſome comprehend *Opus* and *Uſus,* when they ſignify *Neceſſity,* under this Rule, as, *Quid opus eſt verbis?* What Need is there of Words? *Ovid. Nunc viribus uſus,* Now there is Need of Strength, *Virg.* But it is to be remarked that theſe are Subſtantive Nouns, the very ſame with *Opus, operis,* a Work, and *Uſus, uſus,* Uſe; and have the *Ablative* after them, becauſe of the *Preposition* IN, which is underſtood. Sometimes *Opus* hath the *Nominative* by *Num.* 3. as, *Dux nobis opus eſt,* We ſtand in Need of a Leader. It is elegantly joined with the *Participle Perfect*; as, *Conſulto, maturato, invento, facto,* &c. *opus eſt,* We muſt adviſe, make haſte, find out, do, &c.

Digitized by Google

noſtrum, veſtrum; ut,
[b] *Tuum* [a] *eſt id procurare.*

REG. II.

24* MISEREOR, *miſereſco* & *ſatago* regunt Genitivum; ut,
[a] *Miſerere* [b] *civium tuorum.*
[a] *Satagit* [b] *rerum ſuarum.*

REG. III.

25 EST pro *habeo* regit Dativum perſonæ; ut,
[a] *Eſt* [b] *mihi liber.*
[a] *Sunt* [b] *mihi libri.*

REG. IV.

26 SUM pro *affero* regit duos Dativos, unum perſonæ, alterum rei; ut,
[a] *Eſt* [b] *mihi* [bb] *voluptati.*

REG. V.

27 VERBUM ſignifieans commodum vel incommodum regit Dativum; ut,
Fortuna [a] *favet* [b] *fortibus.*
[b] *Nemini* [a] *noceas.*

ſtrum, *are excepted; as,*
It is your Duty to manage that.

RULE II.

MISEREOR, miſereſco *and* ſatago, *govern the Genitive; as,*
Take pity on your Countrymen.
He hath his Hands full at home.

RULE III.

EST *taken for* habeo [to have] *governs the Dative of a Perſon; as,*
I have a Book.
I have Books.

RULE IV.

SUM *taken for* affero [to bring] *governs two Datives, the one of a Perſon, and the other of a Thing; as,*
It is [*brings*] a Pleaſure to me.

RULE V.

A VERB *ſignifying Advantage or Diſadvantage governs the Dative; as,*
Fortune favours the Brave,
Do Hurt to no Man.

REG.

Num. 23. To theſe laſt may be added *Poſſeſſive* Nouns, ſuch as, *Regium, humanum, belluinum,* and the like; as, *Humanum eſt errare,* It is incident to Man to err.

NOTE, That to all thoſe are underſtood *Officium, opus, negotium,* or ſome other Words to be gathered from the Sentence; as, *Me Pompeii totum eſſe ſcis,* You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's Intereſt, *Cic. i. e. amicum, fautorem,* or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum,* or *habeo libros.*

So *Deſum* is uſed elegantly for *Careo*; as, *Deſunt mihi libri,* for *Careo libris,* I want Books.

Num. 26. NOTE, That other *Verbs,* ſuch as, *Do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, relinquo,* &c. may have two Datives; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur,* You are praiſed for this. *Ne mihi vitio vertas,* Do not blame me.

To this may be referred ſuch Expreſſions as theſe, *Eſt mihi nomen Joanni,* My Name is John; which is more elegant than *Eſt mihi nomen Jones* or *Joannis.*

m. 27. This is a very general *Rule,* and (when we ſignify a Thing

Digitized by Google

to

REG. VI.

VERBUM activè significans regit Accusativum; ut,

a *Ama* b *Deum.*

a *Reverere* b *parentes.*

* *Recordor, memini, reminiscor* & *obliviscor* regunt Accusativum vel Genitivum; ut,

a *Recordor* b *lectionis* vel b *lectionem.*

a *Obliviscor* b *injuriæ* vel b *injuriam.*

RULE VI.

A *VERB signifying active-*28 *ly governs the Accusative; as,*

Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, remini-29 scor *and* obliviscor *govern the Accusative or Genitive; as,*

I remember my Lesson.

I forget an Injury.

VER-

---

to be acquired to any Person or Thing) almost common to all Verbs. But in a more particular Manner are comprehended under it,

Verbs signifying,

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as *Commodo, proficio, placeo, consulo, noceo, officio.* But *lædo* and *offendo* govern the *Accus.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their Contraries; as, *Faveo, annuo, arrideo, assentior, adstipulor, gratulor, ignoscо, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, studeo, supplico,* &c. Also *Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor*: Also *Derogo, detrabo, invideo,* &c. But *Juvo* has the *Accus.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY or RESIST; as, *Impero, præcipio, mando; Pareo, servio, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, famulor: Pugno, repugno, certo, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, adversor, refragor,* &c. But *Jubeo* governs the *Accus.*

4. To THREATEN or be ANGRY with; as, *Minor, indignor, irascor, succenseo.*

5. To TRUST; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE and MALE; *Satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.*

7. The Compounds of the Verb SUM; as, *Adsum, prosum, obsum.*

8. Verbs compounded with these ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, præ, sub* and *super*; as, 1. *Adsto, accumbo, acquiesco, assideo, adhæreo, admoveo.* 2. *Antecello, anteeo, anteverto* 3. *Consono, commisceo, condono, commorior.* 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhæreo, insideo, inbic, innitor, invigilo, incumbo.* 5. *Interpono, intervenio, intersero.* 6. *Obrepo, obtrecto, occumbo.* 7. *Postpono, posthabeo.* 8. *Præeo, præstat* for *excellit, præluceo.* 9. *Succedo, submitto, subjicio.* 10. *Superstо, supervenio.*

NOTE, 1. That TO, the Sign of the *Dative*, is frequently understood.

NOTE, 2. That TO is not always a Sign of the *Dative* for 1. Verbs of *Local Motion*; as, *Eo, venio, proficiscor*: And 2. These Verbs *Provoco, voco, invito, hortor, specto, pertineo, attineo,* and such like, have the *Accusative* with the Preposition *ad.*

Num. 28. NOTE, That *Neuter* and *Intransitive Verbs* have sometimes an *Accusative* after them. 1. Of their *own* or the *like* Signification; as, *Vivere vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Sitire sanguinem, Olere hircum.* 2. When taken in a *Metaphorical* Sense; as, *Ardebat Alexin,* i. e. *Vehementer amabat.*

VERBA activa alium unà cum Accusativo casum regentia.

30 * 1. VERBA accusandi, damnandi & absolvendi, cum Accusativo personæ, regunt etiam Genitivum criminis; ut,

a *Arguit* b *me* bb *furti*,
b *Meipsum* bb *ingertiæ* a *condemno*.
b *Illum* bb *homicidii* a *absolvunt*.

31 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi & auferendi, regunt Dativum cum Accusativo; ut,

Active VERBS governing another Case together with the Accusative.

1. *VERBS of Accusing, Condemning and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, govern also the Genitive of the Crime; as,*

He accuses me of Theft.
I condemn myself of Laziness.
They acquit him of Manslaughter.

2. *VERBS of Comparing, Giving, Declaring and Taking away, govern the Dative with the Accusative; as,*

a *Com-*

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo*, &c.

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, *Damno, condemno, convinco*, &c.

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That the *Genitive* may be changed into the *Ablative*, either with or without a *Prepositon*; as, *purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*, I clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condemnavit*. He found him guilty of a Riot, *Cic.*

NOTE, 2. That the *Genitive*, properly speaking, is governed by some *Ablative* understood, such as, *Crimine, pœna, actione, causa*; as, *Accusare furti*, i. e. *Crimine furti. Condemnare capitis*, i. e. *pœna capitis.*

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pœna, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a *Preposition.*

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of *preferring* or *postponing*.

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of *Receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing*.

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of *Explaining, shewing, denying*, &c.

4 Verbs of TAKING away are, *Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, furripio, detrabo, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo*, &c.

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the *Dative* by *Num.* 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the *Dative* with the *Accusative*, when together with the *Thing done* is also signified the *Person* or *Thing* to, or for whom it is *done*; as, *Doce mihi filium*, Teach me my Son; *Cura mihi hanc rem*, Take care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono*, have frequently the *Ablative* with *cum*.

Digitized by Google

a *Comparo* b *Virgilium* bb *Homero.*
I compare *Virgil* to *Homer.*

b *Suum* bb *cuique* a *tribuito.*
Give every Man his own.

a *Narras* b *fabulam* ob *surdo.*
You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

a *Eripuit* b *me* bb *morti.*
He rescued me from Death.

*3. VERBA rogandi & docendi duos admittunt Accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei; ut,
3. *VERBS of Asking and* 32 *Teaching admit of two Accusatives, the first of a Person, and the second of a Thing; as,*

a *Posce* b *Deum* bb *veniam.*
Beg Pardon of God.

a *Docuit* b *me* bb *Grammaticam.*
He taught me Grammar.

ANNOTATIO.

* Quorum activa duos Casus regunt, eorum passiva posteriorem retinent; ut,
The Passives of such Active 33 *Verbs as govern two Cases, do still retain the last of them; as,*

a *Accusor* b *furti.*
I am accused of Theft.

Virgilius a *comparatur* b *Homero.*
Virgil is compared to *Homer.*

a *Doceor* b *Grammaticam.*
I am taught Grammar.

REG. VII.

*PRETIUM rei à quovis Verbo in Ablativo regitur; ut,

RULE VII.

THE Price of a Thing is 34 *governed in the Ablative by any Verb; as,*

a *Emi*

Num. 32. NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two *Accusatives*, are also reckoned these following;

1. CELO; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem*, Conceal this from your Wife, *Plaut.* But we can say also, *Celo te de hac re*, and *Celo tibi hanc rem.*

2. Verbs of CLOATHING; as, *Induit se calceos.* He put on his Shoes. But these have more commonly the *Ablative* of the Thing without a *Preposition*; as, *Vestit se purpura*, He cloaths himself with Purple. *Induo* and *Exuo* have frequently the Person in the *Dative*, and the *Thing* in the *Accusative*; as, *Thoracem sibi induit*, He put on his Breast plate.

3. MONEO; as, *Id unum te monco*, I put you in Mind of this one Thing. But, unless it is some general Word, [as, *Hoc, illud, id*, &c.] *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*, have either the *Genitive*, as, *Admoneo te officii*, I put you in Mind of your Duty; Or the *Ablative* with *de*: as, *De hac re te sæpius admonui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of *Asking* often change the *Accusative* of the *Person* into an *Ablative* with the *Preposition*; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, postulo hoc a te*; I intreat this of you: Some always, as, *Contendo, quæro, scitor, scisciter hoc à te.* Finally, some have the *Accusative* of the *Person*, and the *Ablative* of the *Thing* with *de*; as, *Interrogo, consulo, percontor te de hac re.*

[a] *Emi librum* [b] *duobus aſſibus.*
[a] *Vendidit hic* [b] *auro patriam.*
Demoſthenes [a] *docuit* [b] *talento.*

I bought a Book for two Shillings.
This Man ſold his Country for Gold.
Demoſthenes taught for a Talent.

35 * Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*; ut,
[b] *Quanti* [a] *conſtitit?*
Aſſe & [b] *pluris.*

Theſe Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, *are excepted; as*,
How much coſt it?
A Shilling and more.

36 * VERBA æſtimandi regunt hujuſmodi Genitivos, *Magni, parvi, nihili*, &c. ut,
[a] *Æſtimo te* [b] *magni.*

VERBS of valuing govern ſuch Genitives as theſe, Magni, parvi, nihili, *&c. as*,
I value you much.

R E G. VIII.

RULE VIII.

37* VERBA copiæ & inopiæ plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,
[a] *Abundat* [b] *divitiis.*
[a] *Caret omni* [b] *culpâ.*

VERBS of Plenty and Scarceneſs for the moſt part govern the Ablative; as,
He abounds in Riches.
He has no Fault.

38 **Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, veſcor*, regunt Ablativum; ut,
[a] *Utitur* [b] *fraude.*
[a] *Abutitur* [b] *libris.*

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, veſcor, *govern the Ablative; as*,
He uſes Deceit.
He abuſes Books.

§ 2. *Re-*

Num. 35. NOTE, That if the *Subſtantive* be expreſſed, they are put in the *Ablative*; as, *Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of *Valuing* are, *Æſtimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.*

2. The reſt of the Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, aſſis, teruncii, hujus*: Alſo *Æqui* and *boni* after *facio* and *conſulo.*

NOTE, 1. That we ſay alſo, *Æſtimo magno, parvo*, ſupple *pretio.*

NOTE, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in *Phædrus*, II. 5. 25.

Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt.

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Eget eris*, He wants Money, *Hor. Implentur veteris Bacchi*, They are filled with old Wine, *Virg.*

NOTE, That Verbs of *Loading* and *Unloading*, and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus.* The Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere*, I will eaſe you of this Burden. *Liberavit nos metu*, He delivered us from Fear.

Num. 38. To theſe Verbs add *Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, communico,*

Digitized by Google

§ 2. *Regimen Verborum Impersonalium.*

REG. IX.

VERBUM impersonale regit Dativum; ut,

a *Expedit* b *reipublicæ.*

a *Licet* b *nemini peccare.*

* EXCEP. 1. *Refert* & *Interest* Genitivum postulant; ut,

a *Refert* b *patris.*

a *Interest* b *omnium.*

* At *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* ponuntur in Accusativo plurali; ut,

Non b *mea* a *refert.*

* EXCEP. 2. Hæc quinque, *Miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet* & *piget* regunt Accusativum personæ, cum Genitivo rei; ut,

a *Miseret* b *me* bb *tui.*

a *Pœnitet* b *me* bb *peccati.*

a *Tædet* b *me* bb *vitæ.*

* EXCEP. 3. Hæc quatuor, *Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet,* regunt Accusativum personæ cum Infinitivo; ut,

§ 2. The Government of **Impersonal** Verbs.

RULE IX.

AN *Impersonal Verb* 39
governs the Dative; as,

It is profitable for the State.

No Man is allowed to sin.

EXCEP. 1. Refert *and* In- 40
tereſt *require the Genitive; as,*

It concerns my Father.

It is the Interêſt of all.

But mea, tua, ſua, noſtra, 41
veſtra, *are put in the Accuſative Plural; as,*

I am not concerned.

EXC. 2. *Theſe five,* Mi- 42
ſeret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, *and* piget, *govern the Accuſative of a Perſon, with the Genitive of a Thing; as,*

I pity you.

I repent of my Sins.

I am weary of my Life.

EXC. 3. *Theſe four,* De- 43
cet, delectat, juvat, oportet, *govern the Accuſative of the Perſon with the Infinitive; as,*

M a *Delectat*

---

munico, victito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, naſcor, creor, officio, conſto, proſequor, &c.

NOTE, That *Potior* ſometimes governs the *Genitive*; as, *Potiri hoſtium,* To get his Enemies into his Power. *Potiri rerum,* To have the chief Rule.

Num. 39. Such as theſe, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, diſplicet, vacat, reſtat, præſtat, liquet, nocet, dolet, ſufficit,* &c. Together with the *Dative* they have commonly an *Infinitive* after them, which is ſuppoſed to ſupply the Place of a *Nominative* before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this *Genitive* is frequently turned into the *Infinitive*; as, *Pœnitet me peccâſſe; Tædet me vivere*; and ſo they fall in with the following Rule.

Digitized by Google

a *Delectat* b *me* bb *ſtudere.*
Non a *decet* b *te* bb *rixari.*

I delight to ſtudy.
It does not become you to ſcold.

§ 3. *REGIMEN Infinitivi, Participiorum, Gerundiorum & Supinorum.*

REG. X.

44 UNUM Verbum regit aliud in Infinitivo; ut,
a *Cupio* b *diſcere.*

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT of the Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

RULE X.

ONE *Verb governs another in the Infinitive; as,*
I deſire to learn.

REG. XI.

45 PARTICIPIA, Gerundia & Supina regunt Caſum ſuorum verborum; ut,
a *Amans* b *virtutem.*
a *Carens* b *fraude.*

RULE XI.

PARTICIPLES, Gerunds and Supines govern the Caſe of their own Verbs; as,
Loving Virtue.
Wanting Guile.

1. *GERUNDIA.*

46 1. GERUNDIUM in DUM Nominativi Caſûs cum verbo [*eſt*] regit Dativum; ut,
a *Vivendum eſt* b *mihi rectè.*
a *Moriendum eſt* b *omnibus.*

1. GERUNDS.

1. *THE Gerund in DUM of the Nominative Caſe with the Verb* [eſt] *governs the Dative; as,*
I muſt live well.
All muſt die.

47 2. Gerundium in DI regitur à Subſtantivis vel Adjectivis; ut,
a *Tempus* b *legendi.*
a *Cupidus* b *diſcendi.*

2. *The Gerund in DI is governed by Subſtantives or Adjectives; as,*
Time of reading.
Deſirous to learn.

3. Ge-

Num. 43. NOTE, That *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the *Subjunctive Mood*, UT being underſtood; as, *Oportet facias.* [You muſt do it] for *Oportet te facere.*

Attinet, *Pertinet* and *Spectat*, when uſed *impersonally*, (which rarely happens) have the *Accuſative* with *ad*, as was obſerved above, *p.* 85.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by *Adjectives*; as, *Cupidus & cupiens diſcere.*

NOTE, That the Verb *Cœpit* or *cœperunt* is ſometimes underſtood; as, *Omnes mihi invidere*; ſupple *cœperunt.* They all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This *Dative* is frequently underſtood; as, *Eundum eſt*, (ſupple *nobis*) We muſt go.

NOTE, That this *Gerund* always imports *Neceſſity*, and the *Dative* after it is the *Perſon* on whom the *Neceſſity* lies.

Num. 47. The *Subſtantives* are ſuch as theſe, *Amor, cauſa, gratia, ſtudium, tempus, occaſio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido*, &c.

2. The *Adjectives* are generally *Verbals*, mentioned *Num.* 14.

Google

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Casûs regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem ſignificantibus; ut,

Charta [a] *utilis* [b] *ſcribendo.*

4. Gerundium in DUM Accuſativi Casûs regitur à Præpoſitionibus *ad* vel *inter*; ut,

Promptus [a] *ad* [b] *audiendum.*
Attentus [a] *inter* [b] *docendum.*

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Casûs regitur a Præpoſitionibus, *a, ab, de, e, ex,* vel *in;* ut,

Pœna [a] *a* [b] *peccando abſterret.*

* Vel ſine Præpoſitione, ut Ablativus Modi vel Cauſæ; ut,

Memoria [b] *excolendo* [a] *augetur.*

[a] *Defeſſus ſum* [b] *ambulando.*

6. Gerundia Accuſativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in DUS, quæ cum ſuis Subſtantivis in Genere, Numero & Caſu concordant; ut,

Petendum eſt pacem.
Tempus petendi pacem.

3. *The Gerund in DO of* the Dative Caſe is governed by Adjectives ſignifying Uſefulneſs or Fitneſs; as, 48

Paper uſeful for writing.

4. *The Gerund in DUM of* the Accuſative Caſe is governed by the Prepoſitions ad *or* inter; as, 49

Ready to hear.
Attentive in Time of teaching.

5. *The Gerund in DO of* the Ablative Caſe is governed by the Prepoſitions, a, ab, de, e, ex, *or* in; as, 50

Puniſhment frightens from ſinning.

* *Or without a Prepoſition, as the Ablative of Manner or Cauſe;* as, 51

The Memory is improved by exerciſing it.
I am wearied with walking.

6. *Gerunds governing the Accuſative are elegantly turned into the Participles in* DUS, *which agree with their Subſtantives in Gender, Number and Caſe;* as, 52

Petenda eſt pax.
Tempus petendæ pacis.

Num. 48. The *Adjective* of *Fitneſs* is often underſtood; as, *Non eſt ſolvendo*; He is not able to pay, [ſupple *aptus* or *par.*]

Note, That ſometimes this *Gerund* is governed by a Verb; as, *Epidicum quærendo operam dabo,* I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus. *Plaut.*

Num. 49. Note, 1. That it hath ſometimes, but very rarely, the Prepoſition *ob* and *ante,* as, *Ob abſolvendum munus,* For finiſhing your Task, *Cic. Ante domandum,* Before they are tamed or broken, *Virg.* ſpeaking of Horſes.

Note, 2. That what was the *Gerund* in *Dum* of the Nominative with the Verb *eſt, fuit,* &c. becomes the *Accuſative* with *eſſe*; as, *Omnibus moriendum eſſe novimus,* We know all muſt die.

Digitized by Google

Ad petendum pacem.	Ad petendam pacem.
A petendo pacem.	A petenda pace.
SUPINA.	SUPINES.
53* 1. Supinum in UM ponitur poſt verbum motûs; ut,	1. *The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as,*
[a] *Abiit* [b] *deambulatum.*	He hath gone to walk.
54* 2. Supinum in U ponitur poſt nomen adjectivum; ut,	2. *The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as,*
[a] *Facile* [b] *dictu.*	Eaſy to tell, *or* to be told.

§ 4. *Con-*

Num. 52. Add to theſe the *Gerunds* of *Fungor*, *fruor* and *potior*.

Theſe *Participles* in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the *Subſtantive* muſt always be of the ſame Caſe that the *Gerund* was of.

NOTE 2. That becauſe of its noiſy Sound, the *Gerund* in *di* is ſeldom changed into the *Genitive Plural*; but either the *Accuſative* is retained; as *Studio patres veſtros videndi*, rather than *Patrum veſtrorum videndorum*; or it is turned into the Genitive Plural, without changing the Gerund; as, *patrum veſtrorum videndi ſtudio*. Thus *Valla* and *Farnabius*; but ſee my *Gram. maj. vol.* 2. *p.* 276.

Num. 53. The Supine in UM is elegantly uſed with the Verb *Eo* when we ſignify that one ſets himſelf about the doing of a Thing; as, *In mea vita lu laudem is quæſitum?* Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life? *Ter.* And this is the Reaſon why this Supine with *iri* taken impersonally, ſupplies the Place of the *Future* of the *Infin. Paſſ.*

Some general Remarks *on the* Conſtruction *of* Participles, Gerunds *and* Supines.

NOTE, 1. That *Participles*, *Gerunds* and *Supines* have a twofold *Conſtruction*; one as they partake of the Nature of *Verbs*, by which they govern a certain Caſe after them; another as they partake of the Nature of *Nouns*, and conſequently are ſubject to the ſame Rules with them; Thus,

1. A *Participle* is always an *Adjective* agreeing with its *Subſt.* by *Num.* 1.

2. A *Gerund* is a *Subſtantive* and conſtrued as follows; (1.) That in *dum* of the *Nominative* by *Num.* 2. Of the *Accuſ.* by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *di* by *Num.* 11. or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the *Dat.* by *Num.* 16. of the *Ablat.* by *Num.* 69. 71. or 55.

3. A *Supine* is alſo a *Subſtantive*, (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* underſtood, by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *u* governed by *in* underſtood, by *Num.* 71.

NOTE, 2. That the Preſent of the *Infinitive Active*, the *firſt Supine* and the *Gerund* in *dum* with the Preposition *ad*, are thus diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* is uſed after *Verbs* of *Motion*; The *Infinitive* after any other *Verbs*; The *Gerund* in *dum* with *ad* after *Adjective* Nouns. But theſe laſt are frequently to be met with after *Verbs* of *Motion*; and Poets uſe alſo the *Infinitive* after *Adjectives*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Paſſive* and the *laſt Supine*, are diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* hath always an *Adjective* before it; the *Infinitive* hath not, unleſs (as I ſaid) among Poets.

Digitized by Google

§ 4. *Conſtructio* CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

1. *Cauſa, Modus & Inſtrumentum.*

REG. XII.

* CAUSA, Modus & Inſtrumentum ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

[a] *Palleo* [b] *metu.*
[a] *Fecit ſuo* [b] *more.*
[a] *Scribo* [b] *calamo.*

2. *Locus.*

REG. XIII.

* 1. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in Genitivo,

§ 2. The Conſtruction of **Circumſtances** (*a*).

1. The Cauſe, Manner, and Inſtrument.

RULE XII.

THE *Cauſe Manner and Inſtrument are put in the Ablative; as,* 55

I am pale for Fear.
He did it after his own Way.
I write with a Pen.

2. **Place.**

RULE XIII.

THE *Name of a Town is put in the Genitive,* 56

nitivo,

(*a*) *Adjective* Nouns, but eſpecially *Verbs*, have frequently ſome CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Diſcourſe; the moſt conſiderable whereof, with reſpect to Conſtruction, are theſe five. 1. The *Cauſe* or *Reaſon* why any Thing is done. 2. The *Way* or *Manner* how it is done. 3. The *Inſtrument* or *Thing* wherewith it is done. 4. The *Place* where. And 5. The *Time* when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE, 1. That the Cauſe is known by the Queſtion CUR or QUARE? *Why? Wherefore?* &c. The MANNER by the Queſtion QUOMODO? *How?* And the INSTRUMENT by the Queſtion QUOCUM *Wherewith?*

NOTE, 2. That the *Prepoſition* is frequently expreſt with the *Cauſe* and *Manner*; as, *Præ gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum ſummo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Diſgrace. But the *Prepoſition* [CUM] is never added to the *Inſtrument*: For we cannot ſay, *Scribo cum calamo*; *Cum oculis vidi.*

NOTE, 3. But here we muſt carefully diſtinguiſh between the *Inſtrument*, and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatus*, or *Ablative of Concomitancy*, *i. e.* ſignifying that ſomething was in *Company* with another; for then the *Prepoſition* [CUM] is generally expreſt; as, *Ingreſſus eſt cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, *i. e.* Having a Sword with him or about him.

NOTE, 4. That to *Cauſe* ſome refer the *Matter* of which any Thing is made; as, *Clypeus æreſ fabricatus*, A Shield made of Braſs; But (except with the Poets) the *Prepoſition* is for the moſt part expreſt.

NOTE, 5. That to *Manner* ſome refer the *Adjunct*, *i. e.* ſomething joined to another Thing; as, *Terra amœna floribus*, A Land pleaſant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE, 6. That to *Inſtrument* ſome refer *Conficior dolore, inedià*, &c. *Proſequor odio, amore*, &c. *Afficio te honore, contumeliâ*, &c. *Laceſſo verbis aſperis*, &c.

nitivo, cùm quæstio fit per UBI; ut,

[a] *Vixit* [b] *Romæ*.
[a] *Mortuus eſt* [b] *Londini*.

57 * EXCEP. Si verò ſit tertiæ Declinationis, aut Pluralis numeri, in Ablativo effertur; ut,

[a] *Habitat* [b] *Carthagine*.
[a] *Studuit* [b] *Pariſiis*.

58 * 2. Cùm quæſtio fit per QUO, nomen oppidi in Accuſativo regitur; ut,

[a] *Venit* [b] *Edinburgum*.
[a] *Profectus eſt* [b] *Athenas*.

59 * 3. Si quæratur per UNDE vel QUA, nomen oppidi ponitur in Ablativo; ut,

[a] *Diſceſſit* [b] *Aberdoniâ*.
[b] *Laodicea iter* [a] *faciebat*.

60 * 4. *Domus* & *Rus* eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina conſtruuntur; ut,

Manet domi, He ſtays at home. *Domum revertitur*, He returns home. *Domo arceſſitus ſum*, I am called from home. *Vivit rure* or *ruri*. *Abiit rus*. *Rediit rure*.

61 5. Nominibus regionum, provinciarum, & aliorum locorum, non dictis, Præpoſitio ferè additur; ut,

when the Queſtion is made by UBI, [Where] *as*,

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

EXCEP. But if it is of the third Declenſion, or of the Plural Number, it is expreſt in the Ablative; as,

He dwells at Carthage.
He ſtudied at Paris.

2. When the Queſtion is made by QUO, [Whither] *the Name of a Town is governed in the Accuſative; as*,

He came to Edinburgh.
He went to Athens.

3. If the Queſtion is made by UNDE, [Whence] *or QUA*, [by, *or* through what Place] *the Name of a Town is put in the Ablative; as*,

He went from Aberdeen.
He went through Laodicea.

4. Domus *and* Rus *are conſtrued the ſame Way as Names of Towns; as*,

5. *To Names of Countries, Provinces, and other Places, not mentioned, the Prepoſition is generally added; as*,

UBI? *Natus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe*, &c.
QUO? *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in* [vel *ad*] *urbem*, &c.
UNDE? *Rediit e Scotia, e Fifa, ex Urbe*, &c.
QUA? *Tranſit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem*, &c.

ANNO-

Num. 56, *&c.* NOTE, 1. That the *Prepoſition* is frequently added to *Names* of *Towns*, (eſpecially when the Queſtion is *Quo? Unde?* or *Qua?*) and ſometimes omitted to *Names* of *Countries*, *Provinces*, &c.

ANNOTATIO.

* Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accusativo, interdum & in Ablativo; ut,

Glascua [a] *distat Edinburgo triginta* [b] *millia passuum;* [b] *Iter* vel [b] *itinere unius diei.*

The Distance of one Place from another is put in the Accusative, and sometimes in the Ablative; as,

Glasgow is thirty Miles distant from Edinburgh; One Day's Journey.

3. *Tempus.*

REG. XIV.

* 1. TEMPUS ponitur in Ablativo, cùm quæstio fit per QUANDO; ut,

[a] *Venit* [b] *hora tertia.*

* 2. Cùm quæstio fit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accusativo vel Ablativo; sed sæpius Accusativo; ut,

[a] *Mansit paucos* [b] *dies.*
Sex [b] *mensibus* [a] *abfuit.*

3. Time.

RULE XIV.

1. *TIME is put in the Ablative, when the Question is made by QUANDO,* [When;] *as,*

He came at three o'Clock.

2. *When the Question is made by QUAMDIU,* [How long] *Time is put in the Accusative or Ablative, but oftner in the Accusative; as,*

He staid a few Days.
He was away six Months.

De

NOTE, 2. That *Humi*, *Militiæ* and *Belli* are also used in the Genitive when the Question is made by *Ubi?* as, *Procumbit humi*, He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiæque una fuimus*, We were together both at home and abroad, *or* in Peace and War, *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur*, Was managed both in Peace and War, *Sallust.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a *Town* is put in the *Genitive*, *in urbe* is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *Natus est Romæ urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili.*

¶ These Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus expresst,

The Name of a Town after { IN *or* AT / TO *or* UNTO / FROM *or* THROUGH } is put in the { *Gen.* or *Abl.* † / *Accusative.* / *Ablative.* }

† *i. e.* When it is of the third Declension, or of the Plural Number. But when AT signifies *about* or *near* a Place, we make use of the Preposition *ad*; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam gesserat*, Virg.

Num. 63 and 64. These two Rules may be thus expresst;

1. Nouns that denote a *precise* TERM of TIME are put in the *Ablative.*

2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of *Time* are put in the *Accusative* or *Ablative.*

Digitized by Google

De Ablativo absoluto.
REG. XV.

65* SUBSTANTIVUM cum Participio, quorum Casus a nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo absoluto; ut,

[a] *Sole* [b] *oriente fugiunt tenebræ.*

[a] *Opere* [b] *peracto ludemus.*

III. Constructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

1. *Adverbiorum.*

66* 1. ADVERBIA quædam temporis,

Of the Ablative absolute.
RULE XV.

A *SUBSTANTIVE with a Participle, whose Case depends upon no other Word, are put in the Ablative absolute; as,*

The Sun rising [or while the Sun riseth] Darkness flies away.

Our Work being finished [or when our Work is finished] we will play.

III. *The Construction of Words Indeclinable.*

1. **Adverbs.**

1. SOME *Adverbs of Time, Place and* loci

Num. 65. NOTE, 1. This *Ablative* is called ABSOLUTE or *Independent*, because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the *Substantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a *Word* before, that should govern it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it should be a *Nominative*, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE, 2. That *Having*, *Being*, or a Word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary *Signs* of this *Ablative*.

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true *Substantive*) when a *Participle perfect* is englished by HAVING, we are carefully to advert whether it is *Passive* or *Deponent*. If it is *Passive*, we are to change it into BEING, its true *English*. If it is *Deponent*, there needs no Change, for HAVING is the proper *English* of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having said these Things, departed.	*Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.*	Dep.
James, these Things being said, departed.	*Jacobus his dictis abiit.*	Pass.
Having promised a great Reward.	*Pollicitus magnam mercedem.*	Dep.
A great Reward being promised.	*Magnâ mercede promissâ.*	Pass.

NOTE, 4. That when there is no *Participle* expressed in Latin, *existente* [being] is understood; as, *Me puero*, I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege*, Saturn being King. *Civitate nondum liberâ*, The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the Participle may be resolved into *Dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *si*, *postquam*, &c. [While, seeing, when, if, after] with the *Verb*, either in *English* or *Latin*.

Digitized by Google

loci & Quantitatis regunt Genitivum; ut,

a *Pridie illius* b *diei.*
a *Ubique* b *gentium.*
a *Satis est* b *verborum.*

* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitivorum; ut,

b *Omnium* a *elegantissimè loquitur.*
Vivere a *convenienter* b *naturæ.*

2. *Præpositionum.*

1. PRÆPOSITIONES *Ad, apud, ante,* &c. Accusativum regunt; ut,

a *Ad* b *patrem.*

2. Præpositiones *A, ab, abs,* &c. regunt Ablativum; ut,

a *A* b *patre.*

3. Præpositiones *In, sub, super* & *subter,* regunt Accusativum cùm motus ad locum significatur; ut,

Eo a *in* b *scholam.*
a *Sub* b *mœnia tendit,* Virg.
Incidit a *super* b *agmina,* Id.
Ducit a *subter* b *fastigia tecti,* Id.

¶ At si motus vel quies in loco significetur, *In* & *sub* regunt Ablativum; *Super* & *subter* vel Accusativum vel Ablativum; ut,

Sedeo vel *discurro* a *in* b *schola.*
Recubo vel *ambulo* a *sub* b *umbra.*
Sedens a *super* b *arma,* Virg.
b *Fronde* a *super viridi,* Id.

Quantity governs the Genitive; as,

The Day before that Day.
Every where.
There's enough of Words.

2. *Some Derivative Ad-* 67
verbs govern the Case of their Primitives; as,

He speaks the most elegantly of all.
To live agreeably to Nature.

2. Of Prepositions.

1. THE *Prepositions* Ad, 68
apud, ante, *&c. govern the Accusative; as,*

To the Father.

2. *The Prepositions* A, ab, 69
abs, *&c. govern the Ablative; as,*

From the Father.

3. *The Prepositions* In, sub, 70
super *and* subter, *govern the Accusative when Motion to a Place is signified; as,*

I go into the School.
He goes under the Walls.
It fell upon the Troops.
He brings [*him*] under the Roof of the House.

¶ *But if Motion or Rest in* 71
a Place be signified, In *and* sub *govern the Ablative;* Super *and* subter *either the Accusative or Ablative; as,*

I sit *or* run up and down in the School.
I ly *or* walk under the Shadow.
Sitting above the Arms.
Upon the green Grass.

Digitized by Google

Venæ [a] *ſubter* [b] *cutem diſperſæ*, Plin.

[a] *Subter* [b] *littore*, Catull.

72 4. ¶ Præpoſitio in compoſitione eundem ſæpe caſum regit quem extra; ut.

[a] *Adeamus* [b] *ſcholam.*

[a] *Exeamus* [b] *ſchola.*

The Veins diſperſed under the Skin.

Beneath the Shore.

4. ¶ *A Prepoſition oftimes governs the ſame Caſe in Compoſition that it does without it; as,*

Let us go to the School.

Let us go out of the School.

3. *Inter-*

¶ The Prepoſitions, with the Caſes they govern, are contained in theſe Verſes:

1. Hæ quartum adſciſcunt caſum ſibi præpoſituræ;
Ad, penes, adverſum, cis, citra, adverſus, & extra,
Ultra, poſt, præter, juxta, per, pone, ſecundum,
Erga, apud, ante, ſecus, trans, ſuper, propter, & intra,
Queis addas *contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.*

2. Hæ ſextum poſcunt; *A, cum, tenus, abs, ab, & abſque,*
Atque *palam, pro, præ, clam, de, e, ex, ſine, coram.*

3. *Sub, ſuper, in, ſubter*, quartum ſextumque requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Verſus* and *Uſque* are put after their Caſes; as, *Italiam verſus*, Towards Italy; *Oceanum uſque*, As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already obſerved, *Page* 67.) theſe are properly *Adverbs*, the *Prepoſition* AD being underſtood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenus* is alſo put after its Caſe; as, *Mento tenus*, Up to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural*, 1. When the Word wants the *Singular*; as, *Cumarum tenus*, As far as [the Town] *Cuma*. 2. When we ſpeak of Things of which we have naturally but two; as, *Crurum tenus*, Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Conſonants*, *Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Conſonants*; *Abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE, 5. That *ſubter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in Engliſh IN is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative*, INTO of the *Accuſative*.

NOTE, 7. IN for *erga, contra, per, ſupra, ad*, &c. governs the *Accuſ.* as, *Amor in patriam. Quid ego in te commiſi? Creſcit in dies ſingulos. Imperium regum in proprios greges*, Horat. *Piſces in cœnam empti.* But IN for *inter* governs the *Ablative*; as, *In amicis habere*, Salluſt.

SUB for *circa* governs the *Accuſat.* as, *Sub cœnam.*

SUPER for *ultra, præter* and *inter*, governs the *Accuſat.* as, *Super Garamantas*, Virg. *Super gratiam ſuam*, Salluſt. *In ſermone ſuper cœnam nato*, Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super hac re nimis*, Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the Prepoſition may be diſſolved from the Verb, and put before the Caſe by itſelf; as, *Alloquor patrem, i. e. Loquor ad patrem.* And even then the Prepoſition is frequently repeated; as, *Exire è finibus ſuis*, Cæſ.

Digitized by Google

3. *Interjectionum.*

* 1. INTERJECTIONES *O, heu, & proh,* regunt Vocativum, interdum Accusativum; ut,

[a] *O formose* [b] *puer.*

[a] *Heu* [b] *me miserum!*

* 2. *Hei* & *Væ* regunt Dativum; ut,

[a] *Hei* [b] *mihi!*

[a] *Væ* [b] *vobis.*

4. *Conjunctionum.*

* 1. CONJUNCTIONES *Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* & quædam aliæ, connectunt similes Casus & Modos; ut,

Honora [b] *patrem* [a] *&* [b] *matrem.*

Nec [b] *scribit,* [a] *nec* [b] *legit.*

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam* & *dummodo* Subjunctivo Modo ferè semper adhærent; ut,

Lego [a] *ut* [b] *discam.*

[a] *Utinam* [b] *saperes.*

3. Of Interjections.

1. THE *Interjections* O, Heu *and* Proh, *govern the Vocative, and sometimes the Accusative; as,* 73

O fair Boy.

Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei *and* Væ *govern the Dative; as,* 74

Ah me!

Wo to you.

4. Of Conjunctions.

1. THE *Conjunctions* Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, *and some others, couple like Cases and Moods; as,* 75

Honour your Father and Mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam *and* dummodo *are for the most part joined with the Subjunctive Mood; as,* 76

I read that I may learn.

I wish you were wise.

N 2 SYN-

Num. 75. To these add *Quam, nisi, præterquam, an,* and *Adverbs of Likeness.* The Reason of this *Construction* is because the Words so coupled depend all upon the same Word, which is expresst to one of them and understood to the other.

Numb. 76. To these add all *indefinite* Words, that is, *Interrogatives,* whether *Nouns, Pronouns, Adverbs* or *Conjunctions,* when taken in a *doubtful* or *indefinite* Sense; such as, *Quis, uter, quantus,* &c. *Ubi, quo, unde,* &c. *Cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne,* &c. (See *Page* 65 and 70.) They generally become *Indefinites,* when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, such as, *Scio, nescio, video, intelligo, dubito,* and the like; as, *Ubi est frater tuus? Nescio ubi sit. An venturus est? Dubito an venturus sit.*

NE the *Adverb* of *Forbidding* requires the *Imperative* or *Subjunctive*; as, *Ne time,* or *ne timeas.* See *Page* 47.

Dum, quam, quod, si, sin, ni, nisi, etsi, etiamsi, priusquam, simulac, siquidem, quandoquidem, &c. are joined sometimes with the *Indicative,* and sometimes with the *Subjunctive.*

Digitized by Google

SYNTAXEOS *Synopsis.*

Sive,

Genuinæ & maximè neceſſariæ Conſtructionis Regulæ, ad quas ceteræ omnes reducuntur.

AXIOMATA.

I. OMNIS Oratio conſtat ex Nomine & Verbo.

II. Omnis Nominativus habet ſuum Verbum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

III. Omne Verbum finitum habet ſuum Nominativum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

IV. Omne Adjectivum habet ſuum Subſtantivum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum.

Sex Caſuum Conſtructio.

I. OMNE Verbum finitum expreſſum vel ſuppreſſum concordat cum Nominativo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo, in Numero & Perſona; ut,

Puer legit.
[Homines] *aiunt.*
Romani [cœperunt] *feſtinare.*

A Summary of *SYNTAX.*

Or,

The true and moſt neceſſary Rules of Conſtruction, to which all the reſt are reduced.

Firſt PRINCIPLES.

I. *EVERY Speech* [or Sentence] *conſiſts of a Noun and a Verb.*

II. *Every Nominative hath its own Verb expreſt or underſtood.*

III. *Every finite Verb hath its own Nominative expreſt or underſtood.*

IV. *Every Adjective hath its own Subſtantive expreſt or underſtood.*

The Conſtruction of the ſix Caſes.

I. *EVERY Verb of the Finite Mood expreſt or underſtood agrees with its Nominative expreſt or underſtood, in Number and Perſon; as,*

The Boy reads.
They ſay.
The Romans made haſte.

II. Omn is

Digitized by Google

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur à Subſtantivo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo; ut,

Liber fratris.

Eſt [officium] *patris.*

III. Dativus Acquiſitionis, [*i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur*] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo jungitur; ut,

Dedi Petro.

Cui dediſti?

[Dedi] *Petro.*

Utilis bello.

Non eſt [aptus] *ſolvendo.*

IV. Omnis Accuſativus regitur à Verbo activo, vel † Præpoſitione expreſſis vel ſuppreſſis; ut,

Amo Deum;

& [amo] *parentes.*

Ad patrem.

Abiit [ad] *Londinum.*

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expreſſus vel ſuppreſſus; ut,

Dicit ſe ſcribere.

Licet mihi [me] *eſſe bonum.*

V. Omnis Vocativus abſolutè ponitur, additâ nonnunquam Interjectione *O*; ut,

O Dave.

Heus Syre.

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à † Præpoſitione expreſſa vel ſuppreſſa; ut,

A puero.

Exultat [præ] *gaudio.*

II. *Every Genitive is governed by a Subſtantive expreſt or underſtood; as,*

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. *The Dative of Acquiſition* [*i. e.* to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] *is joined to any Noun or Verb expreſt or underſtood; as,*

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it?

To Peter.

Profitable for War.

He is not able to pay.

IV. *Every Accuſative is governed by an Active Verb, or a † Prepoſition expreſt or underſtood; as,*

I love God;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ *Or is put before the Infinitive expreſt or underſtood; as,*

He ſays that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. *Every Vocative is placed abſolutely, the Interjection* O *being ſometimes added; as,*

O Davus.

Come hither Syrus.

VI. *Every Ablative is governed by a † Prepoſition expreſt or underſtood; as,*

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

APPEN-

† See *Page* 67, and *Larger Syntax, Page* 97 and 98.

Digitized by Google

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero, & Casu; ut,

Bonus vir.

Triste [negotium.]

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in Casu; ut,

Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis Infinitivus regitur à Verbo vel Nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,

Cupio discere.

Dignus amari.

Populus [cœpit] *mirari.*

I. *EVERY Adjective agrees with a Substantive expreſt or underſtood, in Gender, Number, and Caſe; as,*

A good Man.

A ſad Thing.

II. *Subſtantives ſignifying the ſame Thing agree in Caſe; as,*

The Lord God.

III. *Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun expreſt or underſtood; as,*

I deſire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondered.

EXPLANATION.

ALL *Conſtruction* is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Grammarians expreſs it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE *Conſtruction* is founded upon the eſſential Properties of Words, and is almoſt the ſame in all Languages. APPARENT *Conſtruction* entirely depends upon *Cuſtom*, which either for Elegance or Diſpatch, leaves out a great many Words otherwiſe neceſſary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The firſt is compriſed in theſe few *Fundamental Rules*, and more fully branched out in the *Larger Syntax*. The other is alſo interſperſed thro' the *Larger Syntax*, but diſtinguiſhed from that which is *True* by an *Aſterisk*.

The *Caſes* mentioned in the *Rules* of the *Larger Syntax* immediately diſcover the *Rules* of this *Summary* to which they reſpectively belong; theſe that are *True* without any *Ellipſis*; theſe that are *Figurative* by having their *Ellipſis* ſupplied as follows, as they are numbered in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Numb. 13. ſupple *negotium*. Numb. 14 and 47. ſup. *de cauſa, gratia*, or *in re, negotio*. Numb. 15. ſup. *è numero*. Numb. 21. ſup. *de negotio*. Numb. 22 and 23. ſup. *officium, negotium*, &c. Numb. 24. ſup. 1. *ſat*, taken from the Verb. 2. *de cauſa*, &c. Numb. 29. ſup. *memoriam, notitiam, verba*, &c. Numb. 30. ſup. *de crimine, pœna*, &c. Numb. 35. and 36. ſup. *pro re*, or *pretio æris*. Numb. 40. ſup. *inter negotia*, and *res* [*fert*] *ſe ad negotia*. Numb. 42. ſup. *res, negotium*, &c. Numb. 56. ſup. *in urbe*. Numb. 60. *Domi*, ſup. *in ædibus*. Numb. 66. theſe *Adverbs* ſeem to be taken for *Subſtantive* Nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Numb. 73. ſup. *malum eſt*; or theſe *Interjections* are uſed as *Subſtantives*.

Digitized by Google

To

To RULE IV. belong Numb. 18, 53 and 62. ſup. *ad.* Numb. 33. ſup. *quod ad.* Numb. 41. *i. e. Eſt inter mea negotia*; *Refert* [or *res fert*] *ſe ad mea negotia*, &c. Numb. 58. ſup. *ad* or *in*, Numb. 64. ſup. *per*. Numb. 73. ſup. *ſentio*, *lugeo*, &c.

To RULE VI. belong Numb. 12. ſup. *e*, *ex*, or *cum*. Numb. 19. ſup. *præ*. Numb. 20. ſup. *de*, *e*, *ex*, *cum*, &c. Numb. 21. ſup. *a*, *ab*, &c. Numb. 34. ſup. *pro*. Numb. 37, 38. ſup. *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*. Numb. 51 and 55. ſup. *præ*, *cum*, *a*, *ab*. *e*, *ex*, &c. Numb. 54. ſup. *in* or *de*. Numb. 57. ſup. *in*. Numb. 59. ſup. *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*. Numb. 62. ſup. *in*. Numb. 64. ſup. *in* or *pro*. Numb. 65. ſup. *ſub*, *cum*, *a*, *ab*.

Note, 1 That under *Verbs* muſt alſo be comprehended *Participles*, *Gerunds* and *Supines*, becauſe the general Signification of *Verb* is included in them.

Note, 2. That as a Conſequence of this, a learned Grammarian ingeniouſly ſuppoſes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb*, and that when they ſeem to be governed by a *Noun*, the Participle *exiſtens* is underſtood; as, *Utilis* [*exiſtens*] *bello*. *Pollio præſidium* [*exiſtens*] *reis*. *Dignus* [*exiſtens*] *amari*.

Note, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no Part of a Sentence, but the Caſe by which we excite one to hear or execute what we ſay. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative*, as frequently happens, the *Nominative* TU or VOS is underſtood; and that even tho' theſe Words be already expreſt in the *Vocative*; as, *Tu Jacobe lege*, i. e. *O tu Jacobe*, *tu lege*.

Note, 4. That the *Vocative* is ſufficient to itſelf, and does not neceſſarily require the *Interjection* O. See *Voſſius*, *Lib.* VII. *Cap.* 69. and *Sanctius*, *Lib.* IV. *de Ellipſi Verb.* Audio & Narro.

CHAP. II.

Of Expoſition or Reſolution.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a *Sentence*, and placing all the Parts of it, whether expreſt or underſtood, in their proper Order, that the true Senſe and Meaning of it may appear.

1. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound*.

1. A SIMPLE *Sentence* is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND *Sentence* is that which hath two or more ſuch Verbs in it joined together by ſome *Couples*.

Theſe COUPLES are of four Sorts. 1. The *Relative* QUI. 2. Some *Comparative* Words, ſuch as, *tantus*, *quantus*; *talis*, *qualis*; *tam*, *quam*, &c. 3. *Indefinite* Words, [See *Page* 70 and 99.] 4. *Conjunctions*.

In a *Simple Sentence* there are two Things to be conſidered, 1. Its *Eſſential*. 2. Its *Accidental* Parts.

1. The *Eſſential* Parts of a *Sentence* are a *Nominative* and a *Verb*.

2. The *Accidental* Parts are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite *Attention*, as the *Vocative* and *exciting Particles*; as, *O*, *en*, *ecce*, *heus*, &c. 2. Such as ſerve to *introduce* a Sentence, or to ſhew its *Dependence* upon what was ſaid before; as, *Jam*, *hactenus*, *quandoquidem*, *cum*, *dum*, *interea*, &c. 3. Such as *limit* the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb*, and theſe are *Subſtantive Nouns*, 4. Such as *qualify* and *explain* them, *viz.* *Adjec-*

Digitized by Google

PARS TERTIA.

De Sententiis, sive Oratione.

SENTENTIA est quæ [illegible] simul [illegible]

PART THIRD.

Of Sentences, or Speech.

A *SENTENCE is any Thought of the Mind expressed by two or more Words put together*; as, You read; You read Books; You read good Books; You read good Books at home.

CAP. I.

De [illegible] Con[illegible]

S[illegible] compo[illegible]

[illegible] Con[illegible]

CHAP. I.

Of Syntax, or Construction.

SYNTAX is the right Ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord and Government.

Con-

[illegible] principal Part of *Grammar*; for the [illegible] our Thoughts unto others, it will be [illegible] Words, and to know what Changes [illegible] we can also apply them to Practice, and [illegible] for which they are intended. To [illegible] two things absolutely necessary, *viz.* [illegible] our Words according to the Laws [illegible] whose Language we speak. II. That [illegible] spoken and written, and be able to explain [illegible] every Parts of which it is made up. [illegible] or CONSTRUCTION, and the [illegible] SOLUTION. The first shews us [illegible] and the second how to under- [illegible] be owned that there is such [illegible] that is Master of the first [illegible]

[illegible] between Concord and *Government* con- [illegible] Change be made in the *Ac-* [illegible] the one, but the like [illegible] *Government*, the first Word [illegible] Change in the second. In *Con-* [illegible] and the second the

Word

Digitized by Google

Concordantia est quando [illegible] dictio concordat [illegible] quibusdam accidentibus.

Regimen est quando [illegible] git certum casum.

I. *De Concordantia*

Concordantia est quadruplex,

1. *Adjectivi* cum *Substantivo*.
2. *Verbi* cum *Nominativo*.
3. *Relativi* cum *Antecedente*.
4. *Substantivi* cum *Substantivo*.

REGULA I.

Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo in genere, numero & casu; ut,

a *Vir* b *bonus*.
a *Femina* b *casta*.
b *Dulce* a *pomum*.

Word directed [illegible] the second [illegible]

Note, 1. [illegible] noted these [illegible] ters [a] and [b] [illegible] Direction [illegible] Governing [illegible] Words Direction [illegible]

Number 1. Note, [illegible] the Question [illegible] swers to it [illegible] Relative, [illegible]

Note, 2. [illegible] Substantive [illegible] Homo being [illegible]

Note, 3. [illegible] understood [illegible] as if it were [illegible] A sad Thing [illegible]

Digitized by Google

Adjectives, *Adverbs* and *Prepositions*, with their Cases. Sometimes a Part of a *compound* Sentence supplies the Place of those two last kinds of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. NATURAL *Order* is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another, in the same Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

ARTIFICIAL *Order* is when Words are so ranged as to render them most agreeable to the Ear; but so as the Sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A *Sentence* may be resolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural Order* by the following Rules:

1. Take the *Vocative*, *Exciting* and *Introductory* Words where they are found.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *i. e.* Words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by another successively (till you come to the *Verb*) where they are found.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *&c.* where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are understood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

EXAMPLE.

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tuique perfuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque latabere. Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewel then my [Son] Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take Delight in such Writings and Instructions.

This *Compound Sentence* is resolved into these five *Simple Sentences*.

1. *Igitur mi* [fili] *Cicero*, [tu] *vale*, 2. *&* [tu] *perfuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum* [filium] *mihi*; 3. *sed* [tu persuade tibi te] *fore cariorem* [filium mihi in] *multo* [negotio] 4. *si* (tu) *latabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *&* (si tu lætabere talibus) *præceptis*.

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words stand always first in a *Sentence*, unless a *Preposition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words stand immediately before the *Verb*.

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unless it is a *Preposition*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive* Mood is used in *Compound Sentences*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Parts* of a *Compound Sentence* are separated from one another by these *Marks* called INTERPUNCTIONS. 1. These that are *smaller*, named *Clauses*, by this Mark (,) called a *Comma*. 2. These that are *greater*, named *Members*, by this Mark (:) called *Colon*, or this (;) called a *Semicolon*. 3. When a Sentence is thrown in that hath little or no Connexion with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a *Parenthesis* marked thus ( ).

But when the *Sentence*, whether *Simple* or *Compound*, is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation*, it is closed with this Mark (.) called a *Point*. If a Question is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation*. If *Wonder* or some other sudden *Passion* is signified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration*.

FINIS.

Digitized by Google

PRIMA

Morum & Pietatis

PRÆCEPTA,

VIZ.

I. *Dicta* ſeptem ſapientum è Græcis.
II. *Gulielmi Lilii* Monita pædagogica.
III. *Dion. Catonis* Diſticha moralia.
IV. *Joan. Sulpitii Verulani* de moribus & civilitate *Puerorum* Carmen.
V. *Rudimenta Pietatis*, ſive, Oratio Dominica, Symbolum Apoſtolicum & Decalogus; *item* duorum Sacramentorum, *Baptiſmi* & *Sacræ Cœnæ Domini*, Inſtitutiones.

Quibus acceſſit

Summula CATECHISMI ad piam Juniorum Educationem apprime utilis;

ITEM,

Præcipua Capita Chriſtianæ Religionis, deſumpta è ſacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Teſtamenti.

Timor Domini initium ſapientiæ eſt, Prov. i. 7.
Pietas ad omnia utilis eſt, promiſſiones habens & præſentis & futuræ vitæ, 1. Tim. iv. 8.

EDINBURGI,
Apud T. & W. RUDDIMANNOS, *Anno Dom.* 17

Digitized by Google

Dicta SAPIENTUM è Græcis, *D. Eraſmo Roterod.* Interprete.

Aurea dicta, puer, quæ ſunt hic, mente reconde:
Hinc poteris magna commoditate frui.

Dicta PERIANDRI CORINTHII.

OMNIBUS placeto.
Bona res quies.
Periculoſa temeritas.
Semper voluptates ſunt mortales:
Honores autem immortales.
Amicis adverſa fortuna utentibus idem eſto.
Lucrum turpe, res peſſima.
Quicquid promiſeris facito.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.
Veritati adhæreto.
Age quæ juſta ſunt.
Violentiam oderis.
Principibus cede.
Voluptati tempera.
A jurejurando abſtine.
Pietatem ſectare.
Laudato honeſta,
A vitiis abſtine.
Beneficium repende.
Supplicibus miſericors eſto.
Liberos inſtrue.
Sapientum utere conſuetudine.
Litem oderis.
Bonos in pretio habeto.
Arcanum cela.
Cede magnis.
Opportunitatem exſpectato.
Mortalia cogita.
Ne prior injuriam facias.
Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Probrum fugito.
Reſponde in tempore.
Ea facito quorum te non poſſit pœnitere.
Ne cui invideas.
Oculis moderare.
Quod juſtum eſt imitare.
Bene meritos honora.
Spem fove.
Calumniam oderis.
Affabilis eſto.
Cùm erràris, muta conſilium.
Concordiam ſectare.
Diuturnam amicitiam cuſtodi.
Magiſtratus metue.
Omnibus teipſum præbe.
Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
Ne tempori credideris.
Teipſum ne negligas.
Seniorem reverere.
Mortem oppete pro patria.
Ne quavis de re doleas.
Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Sperato tanquam mortalis.
Parcito tanquam immortalis.
Ne efferaris gloria.
Largire cum utilitate.

Digitized by Google

Amicis

Amicis utere.
Mortuum ne irrideto.
Dilige amicos.
Consule inculpatè.

Dicta BIANTIS PRIENENSIS.

IN speculo teipsum contemplare, & si formosus apparebis, age quæ deceant formam: sin deformis, quod in facie minus est, vel deest, id morum pensato pulchritudine.
Audito multa.
Loquere pauca.
De Numine ne malè loquaris.
Quid sit autem auscultа.
Priùs autem intellige; & deinde ad opus accede.
Ne ob divitias laudâris virum indignum.
Persuasione cape, non vi.
Compara in adolescentia quidem modestiam, in senectute verò prudentiam.

Dicta PITTACI MITYLENÆI.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne dixeris; frustatus enim rideberis.
Depositum redde.
Desidiosus ne esto.
A familiaribus in minutis rebus læsus, feras.
Amico ne maledixeris.
Inimicum ne putes amicum.
Uxori dominare [*Christianè.*]
Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem à liberis exspecta.
Inter amicos ne fueris judex.
Ne contende cum parentibus, etiamsi justa dixeris.
Ne geras imperium, priusquam parere didiceris.
Infortunatum ne irriseris.
Audito libenter.
Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.
Ne festines loqui.
Nosce teipsum.
Legibus pare.
Voluptatem coërce.
Ne quid nimis.
Inimicitiam solve.
Ante omnia venerare Numen.
Parentes reverere.
Quæ fieri non possunt, cave concupiscas.
Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus; ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris, dominos tibi pares, non affines.

Dicta CLEOBULI LINDII.

NE sis unquam elatus.
Domûs curam age.
Libros evolve.
Justè judicato.
Bonis benefacito.
Liberos tibi charissimos erudi.
A maledicentia temperato.
Suspicionem abjicito.
Parentes patientia vince.
Beneficii accepti memento.
Inferiorem ne rejicias.
Aliena ne concupiscas.
Ne teipsum præcipites in discrimen.

Digitized by Google

Res amici diligas, ac perinde ſerves ut tuas.
Lapis auri index, aurum homi[num.
Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris.
Voto nihil pretioſius.
Ne cui miniteris; eſt enim muliebre.
Citiùs ad infortunatos amicos, quàm ad fortunatos proficiſcere.
Mendax calumniâ vitam corrumpit.
Mendaces odit quiſque prudens & ſapiens.

Dicta CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

NOſce te ipſum.
Ne cui invideas mortalia.
Temperantiam exerce.
Turpia fuge.
Tempori parce.
Juſtè rem para.
Sapientiâ utere.
Multitudini place.
Oderis calumnias.
Ne quid ſuſpiceris.
Moribus probatis eſto.
Ne fueris oneroſus.

Dicta SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

DEum cole.
Parentes reverere.
Amicis ſuccurre.
Veritatem ſuſtineto.
Ne jurato.
Legibus pareto.
Cogita quod juſtum eſt.
Iracundiæ moderare.
Virtutem laudato.
Malos odio proſequitor.

Dicta THALETIS MILESII.

PRincipem honora.
Amicos probato.
Similis tui ſis.
Nemini promittito.
Quod adeſt boni conſulito.
A vitiis abſtineto.
Gloriam ſectare.
Vitæ curam age.
Pacem dilige.
Laudatus eſto apud omnes.
Suſurronem ex ædibus ejice.

GULIELMI LILII *Monita pædagogica; ſive Carmen de Moribus ad ſuos Diſcipulos.*

QUI mihi diſcipulus, puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.
Manè citus lectum fuge, mollem diſcute ſomnum;
Templa petas ſupplex, & venerare Deum.
Attamen in primis facies ſit lota manuſque;
Sint nitidæ veſtes, comptaque cæſaries.
Deſidiam fugiens, cùm te ſchola noſtra vocârit,
Adſis; nulla pigræ ſit tibi cauſa moræ.

Digitized by Google

Me

Me Præceptorem cùm videris ore saluta,
Et condiscipulos ordine quosque tuos.
Tu quoque fac sedeas, ubi te sedisse jubemus:
Inque loco, nisi sis jussus abire, mane.
Ac magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,
Hoc magis is clara sede locandus erit.
Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,
Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.
Si quid dictabo, scribes; at singula rectè:
Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.
Sed tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis
Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.
Sæpe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvas:
Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.
Qui dubitat, qui sæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit;
Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.
Disce, puer, quæso; noli dedisce re quicquam:
Ne mens te insimulet conscia desidiæ.
Sisque animo attentus: quid enim docuisse juvabit,
Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas?
Nil tam difficile est quod non solertia vincat:
Invigila, & parta est gloria militiæ.
Nam veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,
Ni sit continuo victa labore manûs.
Sic puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum,
Tempus & amittit, spem simul ingenii.
Est etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,
Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.
Incumbens studio, submissa voce loqueris;
Nobis dum reddis, voce canorus eris.
Et quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem;
Singula & abjecto verbula redde libro.
Nec verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum;
Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.
Si quicquam rogito, sic respondere studebis,
Ut laudem dictis & mereare decus.
Non linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tardâ;
Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.
Et quoties loqueris, memor esto loquare Latinè;
Et veluti scopulos barbara verba fuge.
Præterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,
Instrue; & ignaros ad mea vota trahe.

Digitized by Google

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctiſſimus eſſet,
Ipſe brevi reliquis doctior eſſe queat.
Sed tu nec ſtolidos imitabere Grammaticaſtros,
Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii :
Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus ore eſt,
Quem non auctorem barbara turba probet.
Grammaticas rectè ſi vis cognoſcere leges,
Diſcere ſi cupias cultiùs ore loqui :
Addiſcas veterum clariſſima ſcripta virorum,
Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.
Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipſe Terentius optat,
Nunc ſimul amplecti te Ciceronis opus :
Quos qui non didicit, nil præter ſomnia vidit,
Certat & in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.
Sunt quos delectat (ſtudio virtutis honeſtæ
Poſthabito) nugis tempora conterere :
Sunt quibus eſt cordi, manibus, pedibuſve ſodales,
Aut alio quovis ſollicitare modo ;
Eſt alius, qui ſe dum clarum ſanguine jactat,
Inſulſo reliquis improbat ore genus.
Te tam prava ſequi nolim veſtigia morum :
Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.
Nil dabis, aut vendes, nil permutabis emeſve,
Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.
Inſuper & nummos, irritamenta malorum,
Mitte aliis ; puerum nil niſi pura decent.
Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,
Sint procul à vobis ; Martis & arma procul.
Nil penitus dices, quòd turpe, aut non ſit honeſtum :
Eſt vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.
Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,
Jurare aut magni nomina ſacra Dei.
Denique ſervabis res omnes atque ſibellos,
Et tecum quoties iſque rediſque, feres.
Effuge vel cauſas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,
In quibus & nobis diſplicuiſſe potes.

Digitized by Google

DIO-

DIONYSII CATONIS Disticha de Moribus, ad filium:

Recognita de novo ad Metaphrasin Jos. Scaligeri, *ejusdemque* D. Erasmi, P. Scriverii & M. Zuer. Boxhornii *Notas & Castigationes, à* T. R.

In usum Scholarum.

Illis quæ cecinit Themis aut Thymbræus Apollo,
Non canit hicce catus deteriora Cato.

Præfatio cum brevissimis Præceptis.

QUum animadverterem quàm plurimos homines graviter errare in via morum, succurrendum & consulendum eorum opinioni existimavi, maximè ut gloriosè viverent, & honorem contingerent. Nunc te (fili charissime) docebo, quo pacto mores animi tui componas. Igitur præcepta mea ita legito, ut intelligas: Legere enim, & non intelligere, negligere est.

Taque Deo supplica.
Parentes ama.
Cognatos cole.
Magistrum metue.
Datum serva.
Foro te para.
Cum bonis ambula.
Ad consilium ne accesseris, antequam voceris.
Mundus esto.
Saluta libenter.
Majori cede.
Minori parce.
Rem tuam custodi.
Verecundiam serva.
Diligentiam adhibe.
Libros lege.
Quæ legeris memento.
Familiam cura.
Blandus esto.
Rasci ab re noli.
Neminem irriseris.
Miserum ne irriseris.
Mutuum dato.
Cui des videto.
In judicium adesto.
Conjugem ama.
Liberos erudi.
Patere legem quam ipse tuleris.
Pauca in convivio loquere.
Convivare rarò.
Quod satis est dormi.
Jusjurandum serva.
Vino te tempera.
Pugna pro patria.
Nil temere credideris.
Tu te consule.
Meretricem fuge.
Literas disce.
Nihil mentiri debes.
Bonis benefacito.
Maledicus ne esto.
Existimationem retine.
Æquum judica.
Parentes patientia vince.

Digitized by Google

Beneficii accepti memor esto.
Ad prætorium stato.
Consultus esto.
Utere virtute.
Iracundiam tempera.
Trocho lude.
Aleas fuge.
Nihil ex arbitrio virium feceris.
Minorem te ne contempseris.
Aliena concupiscere noli.
Illud stude quod justum est.
Amorem libenter ferto.

DISTICHORUM de Moribus,

LIBER I.

Dei cultus præcipuus.

SI Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,
Hic tibi præcipuè sit pura mente colendus.

Somnolentia vitanda.

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto:
Nam diuturna quies vitiis alimenta ministrat.

Cohibenda lingua.

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam;
Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

Sibi ipsi conveniendum.

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse:
Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.

Nemo temere culpandus.

Si vitam inspicias hominum si denique mores,
Cùm culpas alios; nemo sine crimine vivit.

Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara, relinque:
Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

Mores pro tempore mutandi.

Et † levis & constans, ut res expostulat, esto:
Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.

† *al.* Constans aut levis, *repugnante metro*

Uxori non semper assentiendum.

Nil temere uxori de servis crede querenti:
Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjunx diligit, odit.

Instandum correctioni amici.

Cúmque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,
Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.

Stulti verbis non vincuntur.

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis:
Sermo datur cunctis, animi sapientia paucis.

Amicus sibi quisque primus.

Dilige sic alios, ut sis tibi charus amicus,
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur.

Digitized by Google

Rumores spargere vetitum.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi:
Nam nulli tacuisse nocet, nocet esse locutum.

Fides aliena non promittenda.

Rem tibi promissam certò promittere noli:
Rara fides ideo est, quia multi multa loquuntur.

Judex quisque sit sui.

Cùm te aliquis laudat, judex tuus esse memento:
Plus aliis de te, quàm tu tibi credere noli.

Beneficiorum ratio.

Officium alterius multis narrare memento:
Atque aliis cùm tu beneseceris, ipse sileto.

Senio bene gesta referenda.

Multorum cùm facta senex & dicta recenses,
Fac tibi succurrant, juvenis quæ feceris ipse.

Suspicionis labes.

Ne cures si quis tacito sermone loquatur:
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

In prosperis de adversis cogitandum.

Cùm fueris felix, quæ sunt adversa caveto:
Non eodem cursu respondent ultima primis.

Mors alterius non speranda.

Cùm dubia & fragilis sit nobis vita tributa,
In morte alterius spem tu tibi ponere noli.

Animus in dono æstimandus.

Exiguum munus cùm dat tibi pauper amicus,
Accipito placidè, plenè & laudare memento.

Paupertas toleranda.

Infantem nudum cùm te natura creârit,
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

Mors non formidanda.

Ne timeas illam, quæ vitæ est ultima finis:
Qui mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipsum.

Amicorum ingratitudo fugienda.

Si tibi pro meritis nemo respondet amicus,
Incusare Deum noli, sed te ipse coërce.

Frugalitas.

Ne tibi quid desit quæsitis utere parcè:
Atque quod est serves, semper tibi deesse putato.

Promissio iterata molesta.

Quod præstare potes, ne bis promiseris ulli:
Ne sis ventosus, dum vis bonus ipse videri.

Ars arte deludenda.

Qui simulat verbis, nec corde est fidus amicus:
Tu quoque fac simile; sic ars deluditur arte.

Digitized by Google

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare:
Fistula dulcè canit, volucrem dum decipit auceps.

Liberi artibus instruendi.

Cùm tibi sint nati, nec opes; tunc artibus illos
Instrue, quò possint inopem defendere vitam.

Res quomodo æstimandæ.

Quod vile est, carum; quod carum est, vile putato:
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habeberis ulli.

Culpata non facienda.

Quæ culpare soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse:
Turpe est doctori cum culpa redarguit ipsum.

Concedenda petenda.

Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum:
Nam stultum est petere id quod possit jure negari.

Nota ignotis non commutanda.

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis:
Cognita judicio constant, incognita casu.

Dies quisque supremus putandus.

Cùm dubia incertis versetur vita periclis,
Pro lucro tibi pone diem † quoqucunque laboras.

† *al.* quicunque.

Obsecundandum amicis.

Vincere cum possis, interdum cede sodali:
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

Amicitiæ mutua officia.

Ne dubites, cùm magna petes, impendere parva:
His etenim rebus conjungit Gratia charos.

Amicitia rixas odit.

Litem inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est:
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

Castigatio sine ira.

Servorum ob culpam cum te dolor urget in iram,
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

Patientiâ vincendum.

Quem superare potes, interdum vince ferendo:
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

Quæsita sunt servanda.

Conserva potiùs, quæ sunt jam parta labore:
Cum labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

Consulendum sibi in primis.

Dapsilis interdum notis, & charus amicis.
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

Digitized by Google

LIB. II. PRÆFATIO.

TElluris si forte velis cognoscere cultus,
Virgilium legito. Quòd si mage nôsse laboras
Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,
Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.
Si Romana cupis & civica noscere bella,
Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prœlia dixit.
Si quis amare velis, vel discere amare legendo,
Nasonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,
Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,
Per quæ semotum vitiis traducitur ævum.
Ergo ades, & quæ sit sapientia disce legendo.

De omnibus bene merendum.

SI potes, ignotis etiam prodesse memento:
Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.

Arcana Dei non scrutanda.

Mitte arcana Dei, cœlumque inquirere quid sit:
Cùm sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

Mortis timor gaudia vitæ pellit.

Linque metum lethi, nam stultum est tempore in omni,
Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vitæ.

Iracundia cavenda.

Iratus de re incertâ contendere noli:
Impedit ira animum ne possit cernere verum.

Expendendum ubi opus est.

Fac sumptum properè, cùm res desiderat ipsa:
Dandum etenim est aliquid, cùm tempus postulat aut res.

Fortuna modica tutior.

Quod nimium est fugito, parvo gaudere memento:
Tuta mage est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

Occulta vitia reticenda.

Quod pudeat socios prudens celare memento:
Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

Occulta tandem revelantur.

Ne putes pravos homines peccata lucrari:
Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore † parent.

† *i. e.* apparent, *vulgò* patent, *contra metri legem.*

Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli:
Consilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

Cedendum potiori ad tempus.

Cui sciêris non esse parem te, tempore cede:
Victorem à victo superari sæpe videmus.

Digitized by Google

Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis:
Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

Fortuna non quærenda sorte.

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte:
Quid statuat de te, sine te deliberat ipse.

Luxus odium generat.

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento:
Quæ si non lædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

Animus non deponendus ob iniquum judicium.

Esto animo forti, cùm sis damnatus iniquè:
Nemo diu gaudet, qui judice vincit iniquo.

Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre:
Post inimicitias iram meminisse malorum est:

Teipsum neque lauda neque culpa.

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse:
Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexat inanis.

Parsimonia.

Utere quæsitis parcè, cùm sumptus abundat:
Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo.

Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.

Insipiens esto, cùm tempus postulat, aut res:
Stultitiam simulare loco prudentia summa est.

Neque prodigus, neque avarus.

Luxuriam fugito, simul & vitare memento
Crimen avaritiæ; nam sunt contraria famæ.

Loquaci parum credendum.

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper:
Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

Ebrius vinum non accusat.

Quæ † potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli: † *al.* potus.
Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

Amicis consilia credenda.

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali:
Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

Successus malorum ne te offendat.

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè:
Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

Futuros casus prævidendos.

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos:
Nam leviùs lædit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

Animus in adversis spe fovendus.

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli:
Spem retine: spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.

Oppor-

Digitized by Google

Opportunitas cùm contingit tenenda.

Rem tibi quam noscis aptam, dimittere noli:
Fronte capillata, post est occasio calva.

Futura ex præteritis colligenda.

Quod sequitur specta, quodque imminet antè, videto,
Illum imitare Deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

Vitæ ratio habenda.

Fortiùs ut valeas, interdum parcior esto:
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura saluti.

Multitudini cedendum.

Judicium populi nunquam contemperis unus:
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

Valetudo curanda.

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum est, cura salutis:
Tempora ne culpes, cùm sis tibi causa doloris.

Somnia non observanda.

Somnia ne cures: nam mens humana quod optat,
Dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum.

LIB. III. PRÆFATIO.

HOC quicunque voles carmen cognoscere, lector,
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratissima vitæ,
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem spreveris illud,
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

Dandam esse operam literis.

INstrue præceptis animum, nec discere cesses:
Nam sine doctrina vita est quasi mortis imago.

Moribus captanda fama.

Fortunæ donis semper parere memento:
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsis.

Rectè agendo aliorum linguam ne timeas.

Cùm rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum:
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

Amici crimen celandum.

Productus testis, salvo tamen antè pudore,
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Sermones blandos blæsosque cavere memento:
Simplicitas veri † sana est, fraus ficta loquendi.

† *Scal.* fama, i. e. *indicium*, *al.* norma.

Ignava vita fugienda.

Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur:
Nam cùm animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

Animus fessus relaxandus.

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis:
Ut possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

Digitized by Google

Mala
mè

Mala animo neminem reprehendas.

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpseris unquam:
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

Hereditas augenda.

Quod tibi sors dederit tabulis suprema notato;
Augendo servà; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

Senectus sit munifica.

Cùm tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectæ;
Munificus facito vivas, non parcus amicis.

Verba attendenda, non os loquentis.

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,
Nullius sensum, si prodest, temperis unquam.

Præsenti utendum fortunâ.

Rebus & in censu si non est quod fuit antè,
Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

Uxor spe dotis non quærenda.

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis:
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

Alieno sapere exemplo.

Multorum disce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,
Quæ fugias: vita est nobis aliena magistra.

Nihil ultra vires.

Quod potes, id tentes, operis ne pondere pressus
Succumbat labor, & frustra tentata relinquas.

Consentire videtur qui tacet.

Quod nôsti haud rectè factum, nolito silere:
Ne videare malos imitari velle tacendo.

Rigor favore temperandus.

Judicis auxilium sub iniqua lege rogato:
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

Feras quæ tuâ culpâ pateris.

Quod merito pateris, patienter ferre memento:
Cúmque reus tibi sis, ipsum te judice damna.

Multa legenda, sed cum judicio.

Multa legas facito: perlectis † perlege multa: † *al.* neglige.
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda poëtæ.

Modestè in convivio loquendum.

Inter convivas fac sis sermone modestus:
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.

Conjugis iratæ nolito verba timere:
Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum fœmina plorat.

Quæsitis utendum, non abutendum.

Utere quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti:
Qui sua consumunt, cùm deest, aliena sequuntur.

Digitized by Google

Mors non formidanda.

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam:
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorum est.

Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.

Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento:
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

Pietas erga parentes.

Æquâ diligito charos pietate parentes:
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

LIB. IV. PRÆFATIO.

SEcuram quicunque cupis traducere vitam,
Nec vitiis hærere animum, quæ moribus obsunt;
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento:
Invenies aliquid quo † te nitare magistro.

† *al.* quo vitæ utare. *al.* tu te utare.

Divitiarum contemptus.

DEspice divitias, si vis animo esse beatus;
Quas qui suspiciunt, mendicant semper, avari.

Vivere secundùm naturam optimum.

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

Res ratione regenda.

Cùm sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,
Noli fortunam, quæ ‡ nulla est, dicere cæcam.

‡ *al.* non est.

Amor pecuniæ ad usum.

Dilige † denarium, sed parcè dilige formam,
Quam nemo sanctus, nec honestus captat ‡ habere.

† *al.* denari. ‡ *al.* abære.

In valetudine ne opibus parcas.

Quum fueris locuples corpus curare memento:
Æger dives habet nummos, * sed non habet ipsum.

* *al.* se.

Castigatio paterna ferenda.

Verbera cùm tuleris discens aliquando magistri,
Fer patris imperium, cùm verbis exit in iram.

Certa & utilia agenda.

Res age quæ prosunt: rursus vitare memento
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

Libenter donandum.

Quod donare potes, gratis † concede roganti:
Nam rectè fecisse bonis in parte ‡ lucrosum est.

† *al.* ne vende. ‡ *al.* lucrorum.

Suspicio statim expendenda.

Quod tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit:
Namque solent primò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere.

Venus abstinentiâ cohibenda.

Cùm te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,
Indulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est.

Digitized by Google

Homo malus, fera pessima.

Cùm tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

Sapientia fortitudini præferenda.

Cùm tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,
Fac sapias; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

Amicus cordis medicus.

Auxilium à notis petito, si fortè laboras:
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

Sacrificium spiritus dejectus.

Cùm sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victima pro te?
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

Amicus ex moribus deligendus.

Cùm tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

Avaritia vitanda.

Utere quæsitis opibus; fuge nomen avari:
Quid tibi divitiæ prosunt, si pauper abundas?

Voluptas inimica famæ.

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis, honestam;
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

Senem etiam delirum ne irrideris.

Cùm sapias animo noli irridere senectam;
Nam quicunque senet sensus puerilis in illo est.

Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.

Disce aliquid; nam cùm subito fortuna recessit,
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.

Mores ex verbis cogniti.

Perspicito tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur:
Sermo etenim mores & celat & indicat idem.

Ars usu juvanda.

Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem:
Ut cura ingenium, sic & manus adjuvat usum.

Vitæ contemptus.

Multùm ne cures venturi tempora fati:
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam.

Discendum & docendum.

Disce, sed à doctis: indoctos ipse doceto:
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.

Bibendi ratio.

Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus:
Morbi causa mali nimia est * quandoque voluptas.

* *al.* quæcunque.

Ne damnes quod probaveris.

Laudâris quodcunque palàm, quodcunque probâris,
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.

Cir-

Digitized by Google

Circumspectus utráque fortunâ esto.

Tranquillis rebus quæ sunt adversa † timeto: † *al.* caveto.
Rursus in adversis meliùs sperare memento.

Studio crescit sapientia.

Discere ne cesses; curâ sapientia crescit:
Rara datur longo prudentia temporis usu.

Parcè laudandum.

Parcè laudato; nam quem tu sæpe probâris,
Una dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit amicus.

Discere non pudeat.

Ne pudeat, quæ nesciêris, te velle doceri:
Scire aliquid laus est: † turpe est nil discere velle. † *al.* culpa.

Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.

Cum Venere & Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas:
Quod blandum est animo complectere, sed fuge lites.

Tristibus & tacitis non fidendum.

Demissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento:
Quâ flumen placidum est, forsan latet altiùs undâ.

Sors forti conferenda.

Cùm tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum,
Alterius specta † quo sis discrimine pejor. †. *al.* qui sis.

Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.

Quod potes id tenta: nam littus carpere remis,
Tutiùs est multò, quàm † velis tendere in altum. † *al.* velum

Cum justo iniquè non contendendum.

Contra hominem justum pravè contendere noli:
Semper enim Deus injustas ulciscitur iras.

Fortuna utraque æquè ferenda.

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo:
Sed gaude potius, † tibi si contingat habere. † *al.* si nil.

Ab amico quid ferendum.

Est jactura gravis, quæ sunt, amittere damnis:
Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

Tempori non confidendum.

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ:
Quocunque ingrederis sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

Deus quibus placandus.

† Thure Deum placa; vitulum sine crescat aratro: † *al.* Ture.
Ne credas placare Deum, dum cæde litatur.

A potentioribus læsus dissimula.

Cede locum læsus, fortunæ cede potenti:
Lædere qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit.

Castiga teipsum.

Cùm quid peccâris, castiga te ipse subindè
Vulnera dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

Digitized by Google

Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.

Damnâris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum:
Mutavit mores; sed pignora prima memento.

Beneficiis collatis attende.

Gratior officiis, quo sis mage charior, esto;
Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur † officiperda. † *al.* officiperdæ.

Suspicionem tolle.

Suspectus cave sis, ne sis miser omnibus horis:
Nam timidis & suspectis aptissima mors est.

Humanitas erga servos.

Cùm fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,
Ut servos dicas, homines tamen esse memento.

Occasionem rei commodæ ne prætermittas.

Quamprimum rapienda tibi est occasio prima,
Ne rursus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

Non lætandum repentino obitu.

Morte repentina noli gaudere malorum:
Felices obeunt quorum sine crimine vita est.

Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.

Cùm tibi sit conjux, † ne res & fama laboret, † *al.* nec.
Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

Junge studium.

Cùm tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa;
Fac discas multa, & vites † nil velle doceri. † *al.* non.

Brevitas memoriæ amica.

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus?
Hos brevitas sensûs fecit conjungere binos.

JOANNIS SULPITII Verulani, *de Moribus & Civilitate Puerorum, Carmen.*

QUos decet in vita mores servare docemus,
Virtuti ut studeas, literulisque simul.
Quæ te igitur moneo, miti, puer, indole serva;
Præque tuis oculis hæc mea jussa tene.
Omnibus in rebus studeas precor esse modestus:
Sis avidus laudis, sit tibi cura boni.
Sis pius ac sanctus, nec non venerare parentes:
Et noceas nulli, furripiasque nihil.
Futilis & mendax nunquam, nec credulus esto:
Dedecus & metuas, & reverere bonos.
Improba pestiferi fugias commercia cœtûs,
Sic & honorus eris, sic eris ipse bonus.

Nec

Digitized by Google

Nec maledicta refer, nec promas turpia dictu:
Est stomachosa quidem dicere turpe tibi.
Segnitiem fugito, quæ vitæ commoda pellit:
Parce gulæ turpi, luxuriamque fuge.
Parce & avaritiæ; bilem frænare memento,
Atque animi fastus, invidiamque simul.
Fidus sis audensque bonis; temerarius esse
Despice: non audax sis, timidusve nimis.
Esto verecundus: rectum te lectus habebit;
Detege nec socium, nec tua membra, puer.
Nec sis difficilis nimium, nimiumque severus,
Sed bonus & blandus conspiciare, puer.
Nec penitus mutum, nec te decet esse loquacem;
Convenit ille toro, convenit iste foro.
Hæc te servantem vitæ laus spesque futuræ;
Spernentem turpis pœnaque morsque manent.
Nunc faciles aures, animum quoque trade serenum;
Morigerare mihi, mollia jussa dabo.
Sit sine labe toga, & facies sit lota manusque;
Stiria nec naso pendeat ulla tuo.
Et nihil emineat, sint & sine sordibus ungues;
Sit coma, sit turpi calceus absque luto.
Linguaque non rigeat, careant rubigine dentes;
Atque palam pudeat te fricuisse caput;
Exprimere & pulices, scabiemque urgere nocentem;
Ne te sordidulum, qui videt ista, vocet.
Seu spuis, aut mungis nares, nutasve, memento
Post tua concussum vertere terga caput.
Mucorem haud tangas digitis, sputumve resorbas;
Panniculo nasum mungere nempe decet.
Et ructare cave, quin os in terga reflectas;
Stringe os, & crepitum comprime, quæso, puer.
Munditiæque tibi placeant; medio quoque cultu
Utere, ne turpis vel videare levis.
Non sum qui laudem summo te accumbere mane;
Judice conveniens me dabit hora cibum.
Nec vos ante focum cœnas producite longas;
Esse decet vivas, vivere non ut edas.
Nec sis vinosus, quamvis potâsse Catonem
Fama refert; fugias sumere vina mera.
Namque cibus nimius, potus quoque, maxima pœna;
Corporis & vires ingeniique rapit.

Digitized by Google

Insternas mensam : nitidas imponito quadras,
Atque salem & Cererem, flumina, vina, dapes.
Deinde precare Deum, qui nobis cuncta benignè
Suggerit, ut sanctos det tibi mane cibos.
Atque, puer, jubeo, sedeas vel rarò, sed astans
Pocula porge celer, tolle, repone dapes.
Juraque convivas super importare, minister,
Effuge ; nam turpis sæpe fit inde toga.
Quodque jubebit herus, facilis semperque subito ;
Quemque tibi dederit, tu tibi sume locum.
Et licet antiqui cubuissent pectore prono,
Te colla hæc ætas recta tenere jubet.
Et finito mensæ cubitis hærere potentes :
Tu tantùm faciles pone, repone manus.
Quodque vir egregius pavido tibi porrigit, illud
Sume lubens, grates aptaque verba refer.
Esto tribus digitis, magnos nec sumito morsus ;
Nec duplices offas mandere utrinque juvet.
Te vitare velim, cupidus ne ut lurco sonoras
Contractes fauces : mandere rite decet.
Gausape non macules, aut pectus ; nec tibi mentum
Stillet ; sitve tibi ne manus uncta cave.
Sæpe ora & digitos mappâ siccabis adeptâ.
In quadra faciat nec tua palma moram.
Quod tibi vicinum fuerit tu sume ; sodali
Cede tuo, referat dum tamen ille manum.
Dumque in frusta secat, caveas sumpsisse recisa ;
Lurco legit dulces absque rubore bolos.
Non, manibus gremio immissis, tibi vellicet unguis
Quod sumes : residens non agitato pedes.
Incidasque prius quàm dens contundat osellam :
Tingantur rursum ne tibi morsa cave.
Ne lingas digitos, nec rodas turpiter ossa,
Ast ea cultello radere rite potes.
Sive super mensam cortex cumuletur, & ipsa
Ossa, vel in quadram, præ pedibusve jace.
Nec digitis tenta, nec pinguia delige frusta :
Et quocunque manus, huc tibi lumen eat.
Nec socium torvè inspicias, quidve ederit ille
Advertas : gestus inspice sæpe tuos.
Pocula cùm sumes, tergat tibi mappa labella ;
Si tergas manibus, non mihi charus eris.

Una

Digitized by Google

Una manus sumat pateram, ni hanc jactet in hostem
† Theseus, aut Beli sint monumenta patris:
Hanc binis quod si manibus captabis, id aptè
Efficies: digitis pocula sume tribus.
Ac teneas oculos, nec supra pocula fare:
Plena aliquo vites sit tibi bucca cibo.
Deme merum cyatho, multum ne fortè superstit,
Quod nolit socius sumere fortè tuus.
Qui sapit, extinguet multo cum fonte falernum,
Et parco lympham diluet ille mero.
Haud facies binos haustus, nec fessus anheles,
Sibila nec labiis stridula prome tuis.
Nec citò sorbebis, velut ovi lutea grati:
Nec nimium tardâ sume falerna morâ.
Unum, sive duo, ad summum tria pocula sumes:
Si hunc numerum excedas, jam mihi potus eris.
Fac videas quodcunque bibes, modicumque pitissa:
Crater, sive calix, det tibi vina, brevis.
Os quoque tergebis semper post pocula: palmas
Ablue, quum mensam deseris, atque labra.
Denique jam grates pro donis reddito Christo,
Qui æternas nobis præparat unus opes.
Inflectensque genu, jungens & brachia, PROSIT,
Dicito: mox tolles ordine quæque suo.

† *Vid.* Ovid. Met. 12. *v.* 235. & Virg. Æn. 1. *v.* 733.

REGIMEN MENSÆ honorabile.

Nemo cibum capiat, donec Benedictio fiat.

Dum manducatis,

Vultus hilares habea-
Sal cultello capia-
Quod edendum sit, ne peta-
Non nisi depositum capia-
Rixas & murmura fugia-
Manibus erectis sedea-
Mappam mundam tenea-
Ne scalpatis cavea-
Aliis partem tribua-
Morsus non rejicia-
Modicum sed crebrò biba-
Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-

tis.

Privetur mensa, qui spreverit hæc documenta.

FINIS.

Digitized by Google

RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii & Spiritûs Sancti, Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA, *Matth.* vi.

PAter noſter, qui es in cœlis, 1. Sanctificetur nomen tuum. 2. Veniat regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, ſic etiam in terra. 4. Panem noſtrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita noſtra, ſicut & nos remittimus debitoribus noſtris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, ſed libera nos à malo: Quia tuum eſt regnum, & potentia, & gloria, in ſecula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

CRedo in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli & terræ: 2. Et in Jeſum Chriſtum, filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum noſtrum, 3. Qui conceptus eſt de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Maria Virgine, 4. Paſſus ſub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus, & ſepultus, deſcendit ad inferna; 5. Tertio die reſurrexit à mortuis, 6. Aſcendit ad cœlos, ſedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis; 7. Inde venturus eſt judicatum vivos & mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo ſanctam Eccleſiam catholicam, Sanctorum Communionem. 10. Remiſſionem peccatorum; 11. Carnis reſurrectionem, 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen.*

DECALOGUS, *ſive* LEX DEI.

Loquutus eſt DEUS omnia verba hæc. Exod. xx.

EGO ſum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex Ægypto, è domo ſervitutis;

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conſpectu meo.

II. Ne ſculpas tibi ſimulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut ſupra ſunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis ſub terra: neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim ſum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes, vindi-

Digitized by Google

vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia & quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, & misericordiâ utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt me, & obſervant præcepta mea.

III. Ne uſurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temere. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè uſurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati ſanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, & facies omne opus tuum. At ſeptimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec ſervus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui eſt intra portas tuas. Nam ſex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, & mare, & quæcunque in iis ſunt: requievit autem die ſeptimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, & ſanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum, & matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus eſt.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falſum teſtimonium.

X. Non concupiſces domum proximi tui, non concupiſces uxorem proximi tui, nec ſervum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec aſinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ ſunt proximi tui.

Summa Legis, *Matth.* xxii. 34.

Phariſæi, quum audiviſſent quòd JESUS ſilentium impoſuiſſet Sadducæis, congregati ſunt pariter: 35. *Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans eum, & dicens,* 36. *Præceptor, Quod præceptum maximum eſt in lege?*

37. JESUS autem dixit illi, Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, & ex tota anima tua, & ex omni cogitatione tua. 38. Hoc eſt præceptum maximum & primum. 39. Secundum autem eſt ſimile illi: nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum ſicut te ipſum.

40. Ex his duobus præceptis pendent Lex & Prophetæ.

Quot ſunt Chriſtianæ Eccleſiæ Sacramenta?

Duo.

Quæ ſunt illa?

Baptiſmus & ſacra Cœna Domini.

IN-

Digitized by Google

Institutio Baptismi:

Cujus hæc ſunt Verba. Matth. xxviii. 19. Mar. xvi. 15.

ITe & docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, & Filii, & Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit, & baptizatus fuerit, ſervabitur: Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos, ut cuſtodiant quicquid mandavi vobis: & ecce ego vobiſcum ſum omnibus diebus uſque ad conſummationem ſeculi.

Hæc promiſſio repetitur, cùm Scriptura Baptiſmum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, & ablutionem peccatorum. *Tit.* iii. 5. *Act.* xxii. 16.

Institutio Coenæ Domini:

Cujus hæc ſunt verba. 1 Cor. xi. 23.

EGo enim accepi à Domino noſtro id quod tradidi vobis: Quòd Dominus noſter Jeſus Chriſtus eâ nocte quâ proditus eſt, accepit panem: & gratiis actis, fregit, ac dixit: *Accipite, manducate, hoc eſt corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur: Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem & poculum, poſtquam cœnaſſet, dicendo: *Hoc poculum eſt novum illud fœdus per meum ſanguinem: Hoc facite, quotieſcunque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotieſcunque enim ederitis panem hunc, & poculum hoc biberitis, mortem Domini annunciabitis, uſque quò venerit. Itaque quiſquis ederit panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus eſt corporis & ſanguinis Domini. Probet autem quiſque ſe ipſum, & ita de pane illo edat, & de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit & bibit indignè, damnationem ſibi ipſi edit & bibit, quia non decernit corpus Domini.

Hæc promiſſio à Paulo exprimitur, cùm inquit:

POculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio eſt ſanguinis Chriſti? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio eſt corporis Chriſti? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi ſumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes ſumus.

Digitized by Google

Sum-

Summula CATECHISMI.

Triplex hominis Status.

1. In sanctitate & sanitate.
2. Sub peccato & morte.
3. Sub Christi gratia.

QUÆSTIO.

Q. *Uis hominem creavit?*

Responsio. DEUS.

Q. *Qualem creavit eum?*

R. Sanctum & sanum, mundique dominum.

Q. *In quem usum creatus est?*

R. Ut Deo inserviret.

Q. *Quod servitii genus ab eo exigebat Deus?*

R. Legis suæ præstationem.

Q. *Num in legis Dei præstatione perstitit?*

R. Nequaquam: sed eam fœdè transgressus est.

Q. *Quæ hujus transgressionis pœna?*

R. Mors æterna, cùm animæ, tum corporis, & ipsi & posteris.

Q. *Quomodo inde liberamur?*

R. Meâ Dei gratiâ in Christo Jesu, absque nostris meritis.

Q. *Cujusmodi persona est Christus?*

R. Verè Deus, veréque homo, in persona una.

Q. *Quomodo nos liberavit?*

R. Morte suâ: mortem enim nobis debitam pro nobis subiit, nosque eripuit.

Q. *Num omnes liberantur per Christum?*

R. Minimè, sed ii tantùm quâ fide eum amplectuntur.

Q. *Quid est fides?*

R. Cùm mihi persuadeo Deum me omnesque Sanctos amare, nobisque Christum cum omnibus suis bonis gratis donare.

Q. *Recense summam tuæ fidei?*

R. Credo in Deum, Patrem, &c.

Q. *Quis operatur hanc fidem in nobis?*

R. Spiritus Sanctus per Verbum & Sacramenta.

Q. *Quomodo eam operatur per Verbum & Sacramenta?*

R. Aperit cor, ut Deo loquenti in Verbo & Sacramentis credamus.

Q. *Quid est Dei verbum?*

R. Quicquid veteris ac novi Testamenti libris continetur.

Q. *Verbi Dei quot partes?*

R. Duæ, Lex & Evangelium.

Q. *Quid est Lex?*

R. Doctrina Dei, debitum à nobis exigens, & quia

sumus solvendo, damnans.

Q. *Quid Evangelium?*

R. Doctrina Christum cum omnibus suis bonis nobis offerens, debitumque nostrum ab eo solutum, nosque liberos esse proclamans.

Q. *Quid Sacramenta?*

R. Sigilla Dei, significantia & donantia nobis Christum cum omnibus suis bonis.

Q. *Quæ hæc Christi bona?*

R. Amor Dei, Spiritus Sanctus, unio nostri cum Christo: unde remissio peccatorum, sanatio naturæ, spiritualis nutritio & vita æterna promanant.

Q. *Quot sunt Novi Testamenti Sacramenta?*

R. Duo, Baptismus & sacra Cœna.

Q. *Quid est Baptismus?*

R. Sacramentum insitionis nostræ in Christum, & ablutionis à peccatis.

Q. *Quid insitio nostri in Christum?*

R. Unio nostri cum Christo; unde manat remissio peccatorum & perpetua resipiscentia.

Q. *Baptismus quid juvat fidem?*

R. Testatur, ut aquâ corpus abluitur, sic operante Spiritu Sancto, à peccatorum reatu & radice, per fidem in sanguine Christi nos repurgari.

Q. *Quid est sacra Cœnà?*

R. Sacramentum spiritualis nutritionis nostræ in Christo.

Q. *Cœna Domini quid juvat fidem?*

R. Testatur, ut pane & vino corpora nostra aluntur & augescunt; sic animas nostras corpore & sanguine Christi crucifixi ali & corroborari ad vitam æternam.

Q. *Corpore & sanguine Christi quomodo alimur?*

R. Dum fide percipimus, & Spiritus Sancti, qui una adest, vi, ea nobis applicamus.

Q. *Quando fide percipimus, & nobis applicamus corpus Christi crucifixi?*

R. Dum nobis persuademus Christi mortem & crucifixionem non minùs ad nos pertinere, quàm si ipsi nos pro peccatis nostris crucifixi essemus: Persuasio autem hæc est veræ fidei.

Q. *Vera fides quomodo dignoscitur?*

R. Per bona opera.

Q. *Quomodo cognoscuntur bona opera?*

R. Si Dei legi respondeant.

Q. *Recita Dei legem?*

R. Audi Israel, Ego sum Dominus, &c.

Q. *Hæc lex de quibus te admonet?*

R. De officio erga Deum, & erga proximum.

Q. *Quid officii debes Deo?*

R. Supra omnes eum ut amem.

Q. *Qui*

Digitized by Google

Q. *Quid debes proximo?*

R. Eum ut amem tanquam me ipsum.

Q. *Potis es hæc præstare?*

R. Minime gentium: nam tantisper dum hic vivimus, habitat in nobis peccatum.

Q. *In Dei filiis quid hinc existit?*

R. Perennis pugna inter carnem & spiritum.

Q. *In hac pugna quomodo nobis versandum?*

R. Assiduè orandum, ut Deus peccata nobis remittat, imbecillitatemque sustentet.

Q. *Quomodo orandum?*

R. Ut nos docuit Christus, Pater noster, qui es, &c.

Q. *Qui tibi persuades, Deum donaturum quæ petis?*

R. Quia orare jussit, pollicitusque est, quicquid peterem in Christi nomine, se mihi largiturum.

Q. *Quid debes Deo pro tot beneficiis?*

R. Ut ei gratias agam, perpetuóque serviam.

Q. *Quomodo Deo serviéndum?*

R. Ex verbi ipsius præscripto, ut jam dictum est.

Præcipua Capita Christianæ Religionis, desumpta è Sacra Scriptura Veteris ac Novi Testamenti.

I. *De DEO.*

Joan. iv. 24. DEUS est Spiritus.———

Apoc. iv. 8. Sanctus, Sanctus, Sanctus, Dominus Deus omnipotens, qui fuit, qui est, & qui venturus est.

Psal. cxlvii. 5. Dominus noster est magnus, multarumque virium, & sapientiæ ejus est immensa.

Exod. xxxiv. 6. ———Jehova, Jehova Deus, misericors & exorabilis, longanimis, & abundans benignitate & fide.

Vers. 7. Custodiens misericordiam millibus, condonans iniquitatem, transgressionem & peccatum, & qui nullo pacto absolvet nocentem.

Deut. vi. 4. Jehova Deus noster est unus Jehova.

Joan. v. 7. Tres sunt qui testantur in cœlo, Pater, Sermo & Spiritus Sanctus; & hi tres sunt unum.

II. *De creatione, lapsu, peccato, & miseriâ Hominis.*

Gen. i. 26. ET Deus dixit, Faciamus hominem ad imaginem nostram, secùndùm similitudinem nostram.

Vers. 27. Itaque Deus creavit hominem ad imaginem suam, ad imaginem Dei creavit eum.———

Eccl. vii. 29. Deus fecit hominem rectum.———

Rom. v. 12. Peccatum intravit in mundum per unum hominem, & mors per peccatum: & ita mors pervasit ad omnes homines, quatenus omnes peccárunt.

Rom. iii. 23. Omnes peccaverunt, ac deficiuntur gloriâ Dei.

Digitized by Google

Pſal. li. 5. En formatus ſum in iniquitate, & in peccato mater mea concepit me.

III. *De redemptione generis humani per Ieſum Chriſtum.*

Joan. iii. 16. DEUS ſic amavit mundum, ut dederit filium ſuum unigenitum, ut quiſquis credit in eum, non pereat, ſed habeat vitam æternam.

1 *Jo.* iv. 9. Amor Dei patuit erga nos in hoc, quòd Deus miſit filium ſuum unigenitum in mundum, ut vivamus per eum.

V. 10. In hoc eſt amor, non quòd nos dilexerimus Deum, ſed quòd ipſe dilexerit nos, & miſerit filium ſuum, ut eſſet piaculum pro peccatis noſtris.

1 *Pet.* iii. 18. Chriſtus quoque paſſus eſt ſemel pro peccatis, juſtus pro injuſtis, ut adduceret nos ad Deum.

1. *Pet.* ii. 24. Qui ipſemet ſuſtulit peccata noſtra in ſuo corpore ſuper lignum, ut nos mortui peccatis, viveremus juſtitiæ; cujus vibicibus ſanati ſumus.

Tit. ii. 14. Qui dedit ſeipſum pro nobis ut redimeret nos ab omni iniquitate, & purificaret ſibi ipſi populum peculiarem, accenſum ſtudio bonorum operum.

IV. *De iis quæ Deus à nobis exigit, ut ſalutem per Chriſtum conſequamur.*

Act. xvi. 30. DIxit, Domini, quid faciendum eſt mihi, ut ſim ſalvus?
Ver. 31, Et illi dixerunt, Crede in Dominum Ieſum, & ſalvus eris.

Act. iii. 19. Reſipiſcite, & convertimini, ut peccata veſtra deleantur, cùm tempora recreationis venient à conſpectu Domini.

Iſa. lv. 6. Quærite Jehovam dum poſſit inveniri; invocate eum dum eſt propinquus.

Verſ. 7. Improbus derelinquat viam ſuam, & vir iniquus cogitationes ſuas; revertaturque ad Jehovam, & miſerebitur illius; & ad Deum noſtrum, quia plurimum condonabit.

Luc. ix. 23. Si quis vult venire poſt me, ipſe abneget ſe, tollatque ſuam crucem quotidie, & ſequatur me.

Matth. xi. 28. Venite ad me omnes qui laboratis & onerati eſtis, & ego recreabo vos.

Ver. 20. Attollite jugum meum in vos, & diſcite à me, quia mitis ſum & humilis corde; & invenietis requiem animabus veſtris.

Ver. 30. Jugum enim meum eſt facile, & onus meum eſt leve.

Heb. v. 9. Perfectus factus eſt auctor ſalutis æternæ omnibus obedientibus ſibi.

Jo. xiv. 15. Si amatis me, ſervate præcepta mea.

Jo. xv. 14. Vos eſtis amici mei, ſi feceritis quæcunque ego præcipio vobis.

Tit. ii. 11. Gratia Dei, quæ ſalutem adfert, apparuit omnibus hominibus.

Ver. 12. Erudiens nos, ut, abnegatâ impietate & mundanis cupiditatibus, vivamus ſobriè, juſtè, & piè in hoc præſenti ſeculo.

Mic. vi. 8. Indicavit tibi, O homo! quid ſit bonum; & quid exigit Jehova à te, niſi ut æquum facias, & ames miſericordiam, & ambules ſubmiſſè cum Deo tuo?

Col. iii. 5. Mortificate igitur veſtra membra terreſtria; ſcortationem, impuritatem, libidinem, cupiditatem malam, & avaritiam, quæ eſt idololatria:
Ver. 6. Propter quæ, ira Dei venit ſuper filios contumaces.

Ver. 9.

Digitized by Google

Ver. 8. ——— Deponite hæc omnia, iram, excandescentiam, malitiam, maledicentiam, obscænitatem verborum ex ore vestro.

Ver. 9. Ne mentimini alii aliis.

Ver. 12. Induite igitur (ut electi Dei, sancti amatique) viscera misericordiæ, benignitatem, submissionem animi, lenitatem, patientiàm.

Ver. 13. Sufferentes alii alios, & condonantes alii aliis: si quis habet querelam adversus aliquem, quemadmodum Christus condonavit vobis, sic quoque vos facite.

Ver. 14. Super omnia autem induite charitatem, quæ est vinculum perfectionis.

1 *Thes.* iv. 11. Et ut studeatis esse quieti, & agere res vestras, & operari propriis manibus, sicut præcepimus vobis.

1 *Pet.* ii. 27. Timete Deum, honorate regem.

Rom. xiii. 1. Omnis anima esto subjecta potestatibus supereminentibus: nulla enim est potestas nisi à Deo: potestates quæ sunt, sunt ordinatæ à Deo.

Ver. 2. Itaque quisquis obsistit potestati, obsistit ordinationi Dei: qui autem obsistunt, accipient condemnationem sibi ipsis.

1 *Thes.* v. 12. Rogamus autem vos, fratres, ut agnoscatis eos qui laborant inter vos, & præsunt vobis in Domino, & admonent vos.

Ver. 13. Et faciatis eòs maximi cum amore, propter opus ipsorum.

Heb. 13. 17. Parete gubernatoribus vestris, & obsequimini, nam ii vigilant pro animabus vestris, tanquam reddituri rationem; ut faciant id cum gaudio, & non cum dolore; id enim est inutile vobis.

Col. iii. 18. Uxores, submittite vos viris vestris, ut convenit in Domino.

V. 19. Viri, diligite uxores, & ne estote amarulenti adversus eas.

Eph. vi. 1. Liberi, obedite parentibus vestris in Domino, id enim æquum est.

V. 4. Et vos patres, ne provocate liberos vestros ad iram, sed educate eos in disciplina & admonitione Domini.

Col. iii. 22. Servi, obedite dominis vestris in omnibus secundum carnem, non serviendo ad oculum, ut captantes gratiam hominum, sed cum simplicitate cordis, timentes Deum.

V. 23. Ac quicquid facitis, agitote id ex animo, tanquam Domino & non hominibus.

Col. iv. 1. Domini, præstate jus & æquum servis vestris, scientes vos quoque habere Dominum in cœlis.

Matth. vii. 12. Quæcunque igitur volueritis ut homines faciant vobis, vos facite etiam ita eis.

Matth. xxiv. 13. Qui sustinuerit ad finem, is servabitur.

Gal. vi. 9. Ne defetiscamur rectè faciendo; nam debito tempore metemus, si non fatigemur.

Apoc. ii. 10. Esto fidelis usque ad mortem, & dabo tibi coronam vitæ.

V. *De necessitate hæc præstandi.*

Jo. iij. 36. Qui credit in filium, habet vitam æternam; qui verò non credit filio, non videbit vitam, sed ira Dei manet super eum.

Luc. xiii. 3, 5. Nisi resipiscatis, omnes similiter peribitis.

Ezek. xxxiii. 11. Sic ego vivam, inquit Dominus Jehova, ut non delector morte impii, sed ut impius recedat à via sua, & vivat. Recedite, recedite à malis viis vestris, cur enim moreremini?

Ezek. xviii. 30. Resipiscite, & avertite vos ab omnibus peccatis vestris, ita iniquitas non erit exitio vobis.

V. 31. Abjicite à vobis omnes transgressiones vestras, quibus transgressi estis;

Digitized by Google

stis; & facite vobis cor novum, & spiritum novum, nam quare moreremini?

V. 32. Non enim delector morte morientis, dicit Dominus Jehova; convertite igitur vos, & vivite.

Jo. iii. 3.— Nisi quis denuò natus fuerit, non potest videre regnum Dei.

Matth. xviii. 3. Nisi convertamini, & fiatis ut pueruli, non intrabitis in regnum cœlorum.

Luc. vi. 46. Quid verò vocatis me, Domine, Domine, & non facitis quæ dico.

Heb. xii. 14. Sectamini pacem cum omnibus, & sanctimoniam, sine qua nemo videbit Dominum.

1 *Cor.* vi. 9. An ignoratis injustos non esse possessuros regnum Dei? Ne errate, neque scortatores, nec idololatræ, nec adulteri, nec molles, nec pædicones.

Ver. 10. Nec fures, nec avari, nec ebriosi, nec conviciatores, nec rapaces, possidebunt regnum Dei.

Heb. x. 38.—Si quis se subtraxerit, non erit acceptus animo meo.

VI. *De modis obtinendi gratiam à Deo, virosque ad hæc faciendæ.*

Luc. xi. 9. PEtite & dabitur vobis, quærite & invenietis, pulsate & aperietur vobis.

Ver. 10. Quisquis enim petit, accipit; & qui quærit, invenit; & aperietur pulsanti.

V. 13. Si vos, qui mali estis, sciatis dare bona dona vestris liberis; quanto magis Pater vester cœlestis dabit Sanctum Spiritum petentibus à se?

1 *Pet.* iii. 21. Cui rei consimilis figura, nempe Baptismus, nunc quoque servat nos, non detractio sordium corporis, sed stipulatio bonæ conscientiæ apud Deum, per resurrectionem Jesu Christi.

1 *Cor.* xi. 23. Dominus Jesus eâ nocte qua proditus est, accepit panem,

Ver. 24. Et gratiis actis, fregit ac dixit, Accipite, commedite, hoc est meum corpus quod frangitur pro vobis, hoc facite ad memoriam mei.

V. 25. Itidem accepit poculum, postquam cœnâsset, dicens; Hoc poculum est novum fœdus per meum sanguinem, hoc facite, quoties biberitis, ad memoriam mei.

V. 26. Quoties enim ederitis panem hunc, & biberitis poculum hoc, annunciatis mortem domini donec veniat.

1 *Cor.* x. 16. Poculum benedictionis cui benedicimus, nonne est communio sanguinis Christi? Panis quem frangimus, nonne est communio corporis Christi?

Psal. cxix. 9. Quomodo puer purificabit semitam suam? observando eam secundùm verbum tuum.

V. 11. Recondidi sermonem tuum in animo meo, ut non peccem in te.

V. 59. Recogitavi meos mores, & converti pedes meos ad tua testimonia.

V. 60. Festinavi, ac non cunctatus sum, observare mandata tua.

Prov. iii. 5. Confide Jehovæ toto corde, neve innitere tuæ prudentiæ.

V. 6. Agnosce eum in omnibus viis tuis, & is diriget gressus tuos.

VII. *De quatuor ultimis, viz. de Morte & Judicio, Cælo & Inferno.*

Heb. ix. 27. STatutum est omnibus hominibus ut semel moriantur, postea verò judicium.

Joan. v. 28. Hora venit, in qua omnes qui sunt in monumentis suis audient ejus vocem,

Digitized by Google

Ver. 29. Et prodibunt; qui fecerint bona, in resurrectionem vitæ; qui verò egerint mala, in resurrectionem condemnationis.

2 *Cor.* v. 10. Comparendum est nobis omnibus ante tribunal Christi, ut unusquisque accipiat ea quæ fecerit in corpore, congruenter ad ea quæ fecerit, sive bonum, sive malum.

Matth. xxv. 34. Tunc dicet Rex iis qui erunt ad dextram ejus, Adeste, benedicti Patris mei, possidete regnum paratum vobis à jacto fundamento mundi.

Ver. 41 Tunc dicet etiam iis qui erunt ad sinistram, Facessite à me, execrati, in æternum ignem paratum diabolo & angelis ejus.

Ver. 46. Et isti abibunt in æternum supplicium, justi verò in æternam vitam.

2 *Thes.* i. 7. Dominus Iesus revelabitur de cœlo cum potentibus angelis suis.

Ver. 8. In flammante igne sumens ultionem de iis qui nesciunt Deum, neque obediunt Evangelio Domini nostri Iesu Christi:

Ver. 9. Qui dabunt Pœnas æterno exitio, à facie Domini & à glora potentiæ ejus; cùm venerit, ut glorificetur in sanctis suis, & ut sit admirandus omnibus credentibus.

Two Prayers to be taught unto Children at School, with a Form of blessing God before and after Meat.

Morning Prayer.

O GOD, I praise thee for the Creation of the World, and for the Redemption of Mankind by the Lord Jesus, and for thy many Favours bestowed on me: Thou didst safely take me from the Womb, and hast ever since cared for me; Thou hast by thy Mercy caused me to be born within thy Church, where I was early given to thee in Baptism; Thou hast afforded me the Means of Grace, and called me to the Hope of Glory.

But O most merciful Father, I a poor and miserable Sinner, conceived in Sin, and brought forth in Iniquity, have gone astray from thee; I have not cared to know thee, and to do thy Will, but have done my own Will, and followed my foolish and sinful Inclinations, and do therefore deserve thy Wrath and Curse. O Lord have Mercy upon me, turn me unto thee, and grant me Repentance and Forgiveness of all my Sins for Jesus Sake. Let it from henceforth become my chiefest Care to please thee, and to seek thy Kingdom and Righteousness. Work in me a true Faith, a lively Hope, and a fervent Charity; make me humble, meek, patient, sober and just and, loving to all Men, submissive and obedient to them that are over me, and well content and thankful in every Condition of Life; grant that I may daily grow in knowing, loving, fearing and obeying thee; create in me a clean Heart, O God, and renew a right Spirit within me.

I thank thee, O Lord, for the Care of me this Night, watch over me this Day; keep me mindful that I am always in thy Sight, that I may be in thy Fear all the Day long: And grant that through the whole Course of my Life I may be holy and harmless in all Manner of Conversation, that when this short and frail Life is at an End, I may be made partaker of everlasting Life, through the Merits of Jesus Christ our Lord, in whose Name and Words I pray, *Our Father which art in Heaven*, &c.

Even-

Digitized by Google

Evening Prayer.

MOst gracious God, what shall I render unto thee for thy many and great Benefits bestowed upon me; tho' I have been an undutiful and disobedient Servant unto thee. Thou hast continued thy Care and Kindness for me ever since I was born, and hast preserved me *this* Day; let me never forget thy Goodness, but grant that thereby I may be led to Repentance and Amendment of Life. Preserve me from every thing that is displeasing to thee. O Lord keep me from cursing, swearing and lying, from Pride, Stubbornness and Idleness. Work in me an utter Dislike of all Uncleanness, of Gluttony and Drunkenness, of all Malice and Envy, of Strife and Contention, of Deceit and Covetousness. Give me Grace to deny all Ungodliness and worldly Lusts, and to live godly, righteously and soberly in this present World. Cause me to understand and consider the Laws and Life of Jesus, that I may do his Will and follow his Steps. Let never the Cares of this Life, nor the Love of Riches, nor evil Company, nor the corrupt Custom of the World, withdraw me from the Obedience of thy Laws; but strengthen and establish me by thy holy Spirit, that I may live and die thy faithful Servant.

O Lord send thy Gospel through the World; pour out plenteously the Spirit of Truth, Holiness and Peace on all People: Bless the Church and Kingdom: Preserve the King and all the Royal Family: Guide our Judges and Magistrates, sanctify and assist the Ministers of the Gospel: Visit all that are in Trouble, and sanctify their Afflictions to them: Be gracious unto all my Kindred, Friends and Neighbours; and bless and forgive all mine Enemies.

Lord watch over me this Night, and keep me ever mindful that I am shortly to die and come to Judgment, that I may without Delay turn to thee, and pass the Time of my sojourning here in thy Fear. Good Lord hear me, and grant these my Desires, and what else thou knowest to be needful for me, for the Sake of Jesus, in whose Name and Words I pray, *Our Father*, &c.

Grace before Meat.

O Lord be merciful unto us, and pardon our Sins; sanctify these thy good Benefits, that we by the sober and thankful Use of them, may be enabled for thy Service, through Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour, *Amen.*

Grace after Meat.

WE thank and praise thee, O Lord, the Giver of all Good, who hast at this Time fed our Bodies; stir up in us a greater Care for our Souls; and grant that our short Lives, which are so carefully sustained by thy Bounty, may be spent in doing thy Will. Lead us safely through this vain and sinful World, in which we are Pilgrims and Strangers, and at length bring us to everlasting Rest, through Jesus Christ, *Amen.*

F I N I S.

Digitized by Google